

3 1761 04296 4858

THE
ELEMENTS
OF
LATIN GRAMMAR
AND
EXERCISES
FOR
SCHOOLS

John Hetcher

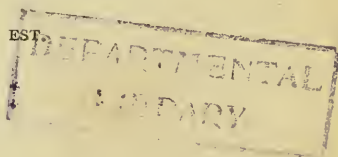
THE
BEGINNER'S
LATIN GRAMMAR
AND
EXERCISES

BY

PERCY H. FROST, M.A.

LATE SCHOLAR OF CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

OMNE INITIUM DIFFICILE EST.



London:

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON
NEW YORK AND BOMBAY

1898.

All rights reserved.

182204
7.7.23.

CAMBRIDGE :

PRINTED BY METCALFE & CO. LIMITED, TRINITY STREET.

IN MEMORIAM
AVUNCULI MEI
PERCIVAL FROST, SC.D., F.R.S.,
E COLL. REG. CANTAB. SOC.,
CUI TUM SEMPER
EGOMET IPSE,
TUM SÆPISSIME
MEUS HIC LIBELLUS,
MAXIMÆ CURÆ
ERAMUS.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

PREFACE.

IN making an addition to the numerous Latin Grammars and Exercise books at present in use, the Author deems a few words of explanation necessary.

This work was originally published as Part I. only, and was, to quote from the preface to that, "intended to explain, in a handy and convenient form, the various difficulties which inevitably confront pupils in their early study of the Latin language."

At the suggestion, however, of a very near and dear friend, lately gone from among us, the Author has thought it advisable to publish it in its present and more *complete* form, consisting of *three parts*.

Part I. is the original book, thoroughly revised and enlarged. Part II. contains all the ordinary grammar which a pupil has to commit to memory, arranged, it is hoped, in a plain and easy form. Part III. consists of exercises on the various points dealt with in Part I. To each exercise a vocabulary has been prefixed, containing all the *fresh* words used in the exercise. Great care has been taken not to repeat in any vocabulary a word that has occurred in a *previous* one, as it is suggested that the pupil should be asked to learn by heart the vocabulary belonging to each exercise, as he does it. As, however, it is impossible for pupils to remember *every* word

they learn, all the words used have been collated in alphabetical order, in a vocabulary at the end of the exercises.

A Key to the Exercises (for Teachers only) can be obtained, price 1/6,

There has also been appended a short account of the names of *persons and places* used in the exercises; as it is hardly right that pupils should use Proper nouns, and know nothing about them.

In preparing Parts I. and II., I am indebted for material aid to the *Public School Latin Primer* and *Arnold's Latin Prose Composition*. In the exercises in Part III. the sentences are mostly *original*: here and there, however, a *familiar* sentence has been used, because of its peculiar fitness in illustrating the point which is being dealt with. In drawing up the accounts of persons and places, I have freely consulted *Lemprière's Classical Dictionary*.

I have also to acknowledge a very kind and appreciative letter on the subject of the original book from Mr. Ward, of the High School, Dublin, accompanied by a valuable paper of emendations and suggestions, of which I have largely availed myself in revising Part I.

BRUNSWICK LODGE,
CAMBRIDGE,
August, 1898.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

THE THREE LEADING RULES	PAGE I
-----------------------------------	-----------

CHAPTER I.

INFLEXION	3
---------------------	---

CHAPTER II.

NOUNS AND DECLENSIONS	4
Genitives singular	4
Characteristic vowel	4
Cases and signs	4
Classification of case-endings	5
Table of case-endings (singular)	6
" " (plural)	7
Peculiarities of declensions	8
Nouns of declension 3 (in -as)	9
" (in -es increasing)	10
" (in -is increasing)	10
" (in -os)	11
" (in -us)	11
" (in -o)	12
" (in -x)	13
" (in -s impure)	14
" (various endings)	14
Variant I nouns	15
Symphonious nouns	16

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVES	28
Rules for agreement of adjective and noun	29
Declension of adjectives	29
Peculiarities of adjectives	30
Comparison of adjectives	31
Numeral adjectives	32

CHAPTER IV.

	PAGE
PRONOUNS, Kinds of	34
‘Suus’ and ‘ejus’	35
‘Se’ and ‘ipse’	37
‘Se’ and ‘eum’	37
‘Qui’ and ‘quis’	38
Relative Pronoun	39
‘Qui’ with subjunctive	41
Correlatives	43
‘Talis’—‘qualis’	44
‘Tantus’—‘quantus’	44
‘Quam maximus’	44
‘Quo’—‘eo’	45
‘Such,’ ways of translating	45
Pronominals	45
Remarks on pronominals	46
‘Unus,’ ‘alius,’ ‘alter,’ ‘aliquis,’ ‘quisquam’	46
‘Quisque,’ ‘quidam,’ ‘idem,’ ‘ipse’	47

CHAPTER V.

VERBS, active voice	48
Characteristic vowel	48
Present- and perfect-stem	48
Supine-stem	49
Present imperative	49
Imperfect subjunctive	50
Endings of persons	50
Table of tense-endings	51
Passive voice	52
Verbs used transitively and intransitively	53
Rules for distinguishing active and passive	54
Deponent verbs	54
Future infinitive of deponent verbs	54
Imperative of deponent verbs	54
Quasi-passive verbs	55
Semi-deponent verbs	55
Frequentative verbs	55
Inceptive verbs	55
Desiderative verbs	55
Io verbs	55
Irregular verbs	56

CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
'Possum'	56
'Volo,' 'nolo,' and 'malo'	57
'Fero'	57
'Eo'	58
'Fio' and 'edo'	59
Impersonal verbs	60
'Licet' and 'oportet'	61
Impersonal use of intransitive verbs	62
Impersonal use of verbs governing dative	62
'Interest' and 'réfert'	63
Defective verbs	64
'Coepi,' 'memini,' 'odi'	64
'Aio,' 'inquam,' 'fari,' 'quaeso'	65
'Ave' and 'salve,' 'vale,' 'age,' &c.	66
Symphonious verbs	66

CHAPTER VI.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD	71
Prolative infinitive	71
Ditto expressing purpose	72
Infinitive after 'asking,' &c.	72
Idioms on present infinitive	72
Sequence of Tenses	73
Present infinitive passive	74
Three ways of translating above	74
Historic infinitive	75

CHAPTER VII.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE	76
Kinds of verbs it follows	76
Method of its use	76
Indicative mood in above	77
Use of compound tenses in above	77
Use of future infinitive in above	78
Signs of tenses in above	78
Questions in above	79

CHAPTER VIII.

FUTURE INFINITIVE PASSIVE	80
Distinguished from perfect infinitive passive	80
Another method of expressing the same	81
Same method with 'possum'	81

CHAPTER IX.

	PAGE
ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	82
Way to translate perfect participle active	82
Ablative absolute with participles	82
Ditto with nouns, adjectives, and pronouns	83
Use of present participle	84
Other participial constructions	85
Participle as verb or adjective	85

CHAPTER X.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION	86
------------------------------------	----

CHAPTER XI.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE	87
Present infinitive as nominative of gerund	87
Cases of gerund	88
Gerundive attraction	88
Idioms, &c., in connection with gerundive	89
Gerundive=must	89
Subject of gerundive	90
With verb governing dative	90
Gerundive in Oratio Obliqua	90
With other tenses than present	90
Translation of 'to be'	91

CHAPTER XII.

SUPINE	92
Active supine	92
Passive supine	93

CHAPTER XIII.

ADVERBS	94
Comparison of adverbs	94
Numeral adverbs	94
Tables of adverbs	94
'Modo' and 'non modo'	95
'Nimis' and 'parum'	96
'Primo,' 'primus,' and 'primum'	96
'Quidem' and 'equidem'	96
'Quotidie' and 'indies'	97
'Tandem' and 'demum'	97

CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE
'Ultró'	97
Adjective as adverb	98
'Coram,' 'clam,' and 'palam'	98
Symphonious adverbs	98

CHAPTER XIV.

PREPOSITIONS	100
Meaning and position of prepositions	100
Nouns of prepositions	100
'About,' 'across,' 'before,' 'by'	101
'For,' 'from'	102
'In,' 'into,' 'of'	103
'To,' 'towards,' 'under,' 'up to,' 'with'	104
'Without'	105

CHAPTER XV.

PREPOSITIONS COMPOUNDED WITH VERBS	106
Inseparable particles with verbs	109
Adverbs with verbs	109
Idioms connected with above	110

CHAPTER XVI.

CONJUNCTIONS	111
'Antequam,' 'priusquam,' 'postquam'	111
'Ante,' 'antea,' 'antequam'	111
'Dum' and 'donec'	112
'Etsi,' 'quamvis,' 'quamquam'	112
'Quin' and 'quominus'	113
'Quando' 'ubi,' 'quum,' 'quoniam'	114
'Si' and 'nisi'	116
'Seu,' 'sive,' 'utrum—an'	117
'Ut,' 'quo,' 'ne,' 'ut non'	118
Table for translation of 'that'	121
'That' =the fact that	122
'Quod' =because	123

CHAPTER XVII.

INTERJECTIONS	124
'En!' and 'ecce!'	124
'Pro!' and 'proh!'	124
'Hei!' and 'vae!'	124
'Heu!' and 'heus!'	124
'O' with accusative	124

CHAPTER XVIII.

	PAGE
PECULIARITIES OF CASES	125
Nominative as subject of verb	125
Agreement of above	125
Composite subject	126
Pronouns as subjects, when expressed	127
Vocative with 'sum'	127
Accusative as direct object	127
Cognate Accusative	127
Factitive object	128
Double accusative	128
Accusative of respect or limitation	129
Subjective genitive	129
Mark, duty, business of	130
Objective genitive	130
Adjective for genitive	130
Partitive genitive	131
'Peritus' and 'Imperitus'	131
Idioms on partitive genitive	131
Genitive of respect	131
Genitives of price	132
Dative after adjectives	132
Use of 'similis,' &c.	133
Dative as indirect object	133
Dative of advantage, &c.	133
Ethic dative	133
Dative of agent	134
Dative of possessor	134
Quid-, cui-, and cui-quid-verbs	134
Signs of ablative, when to be translated	134
Dative for ablative	135
'Of' meaning ablative	135
Ablative with 'egeo' and 'careo'	135
Twelve uses of ablative	136
'Dignus' and 'indignus' with ablative	136
Ablative with 'opus' and 'usus'	136
Use of 'amplius,' 'plus,' and 'minus'	136
Ablative of measurement	137
'The' before comparatives	137

CHAPTER XIX.

	PAGE
REST AT A PLACE	138
Motion to a place	139
Motion from a place	139
Duration of time	140
Point of time	140
Space, distance, length, and breadth	141

CHAPTER XX.

APPOSITION	142
----------------------	-----

CHAPTER XXI.

SPECIAL LATIN NOUNS	143
With singular only	143
With plural only	143
Different meanings in both	143
Defective and indeclinable	144
Heterogeneous	144
Heteroclite	144

CHAPTER XXII.

LATIN FEMININES	145
Special forms	145

CHAPTER XXIII.

LATIN ENDINGS AND SUFFIXES	146
Diminutives	146
Patronymics	146
Special endings of adjectives	147
Suffixes on to pronouns	148

CHAPTER XXIV.

NOTES ON MOODS AND TENSES	149
Complex sentence	149
Latin moods in such a sentence	150
Present tense	150
Imperfect tense	150
Perfect tense	151
Epistolary imperfect	151
Sequence after Latin perfect	152

CHAPTER XXV.

	PAGE
LATIN QUESTIONS	153
Single direct (-ne, num, nonne)	153
Single indirect (num, an)	154
Use of 'haud scio an'	154
Double direct (utrum—an)	155
Double indirect „	156

CHAPTER XXVI.

ORDER OF WORDS IN A LATIN SENTENCE	157
Position of 'meus,' 'tuus,' &c.	158
Position of 'hic,' 'ille,' &c.	158
Words that may not stand first	159

CHAPTER XXVII.

RULES FOR TRANSLATION FROM LATIN	160
What order to take words in	160
Necessity for accuracy	161

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ROMAN TIME AND MONEY	163
Kalends, Nones, Ides	163
Roman method of reckoning time	164
Roman leap-year	164
Roman standard coin	164
The sestertius or sesterce	164
The sestertium	165
How to express sums in above	165
'As' = pound (libra) and 'denarius'	165
Expressions connected with above	165

CHAPTER XXIX.

LATIN NAMES	166
Other abbreviations	167

CHAPTER XXX.

FIGURES OF SPEECH	168
Aposiopesis	168
Ellipsis	168
Hendiadys	168

CONTENTS.

XV

	PAGE
Onomatopœia	169
Synesis	169
Tmesis	170
Zeugma	170

PART II.

GRAMMAR.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS	171—174
Greek, irregular, and compound nouns	174, 175
Genders of nouns	175—179
Adjectives	180—182
Comparison of adjectives	182, 183
„ adverbs	183
Numerals	184, 185
Pronouns	116—188
Pronominals	189
‘ Sum ’ and its compounds	190, 191
Four conjugations (active)	192—199
„ (passive)	200—207
Io verb	208—211
Irregular verbs	212—227
Defective verbs	228
Perfects and Supines	228—235
Table of Prepositions	236
„ Conjunctions	237, 238

PART III.

EXERCISES.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS	239, 240
Adjectives with nouns	241
Comparison of adjectives	241
Numerals	242
Pronouns, possessive and demonstrative	242
„ personal with ‘ sum ’	243
Four conjugations (active)	243, 244
„ (passive)	244, 245
Other pronouns	245—247

	PAGE
Other verbs	248—250
Uses of infinitive, participles, &c.	251—254
Adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions	255—260
Peculiarities of cases	260
Rest, motion, time, and space	261
Apposition	262
Latin questions	263
Roman time and money	263
Vocabularies	265—272
Names of persons	273—281
„ places	281, 282

APPENDIX.

RHYMES ON SPECIAL RULES	283
<i>A.</i> Datives and ablatives in -abus	283
<i>B.</i> Vocatives of nouns of Decl. 2 in -us	283
<i>C.</i> Genitives plural of Decl. 3 in -um	283
<i>D.</i> Ditto of monosyllables in -um	283
<i>E.</i> Datives and ablatives in -ubus	284
<i>F.</i> Declension of 'domus=house'	284
<i>G.</i> Declension of 'res' and 'dies'	284
<i>H.</i> Io verbs	284
<i>I.</i> Verbs of governing dative	284
<i>J.</i> Verbs governing ablative	285
<i>K.</i> Verbs governing genitive	285
<i>L.</i> 'Ut' and 'ne' for present infinitive	285
<i>M.</i> Prepositions governing ablative	285
<i>N.</i> Prepositions governing accusative	286
<i>O.</i> 'Of' as sign of ablative	286
<i>P.</i> Roman method of reckoning time	286

INDEXES.

Index I. (English)	287, 288
„ II. (Latin)	289—291

THREE RULES WHICH MUST NEVER BE BROKEN.

1. Never make a *false concord*.
2. Never put a *nominative* case after (*i.e.* in dependence on) a *transitive* verb.
3. Never put an *accusative* case after an *intransitive* verb, except in 'Oratio Obliqua.'

(1) *Never make a false concord: i.e.* in whatever number and person the nominative is, the verb after it must always be in *the same*: and in whatever number, gender, and case a noun is, the adjective, pronoun, or participle that goes with it, or *in any way refers to it*, must always be in *the same*.

(2) *Never put a nominative case after a transitive verb: i.e.* when the word *after* the verb means somebody or something *quite different* from the word *before* it, and is done something to by the word before it, it must be put (generally) in the *accusative* case.

(3) *Never put an accusative case after an intransitive verb: i.e.* when the word *after* the verb means or refers to the word *before* it, it should be put *in the same case*. In 'Oratio Obliqua' the word before the word is *accusative*; so, if the verb is intransitive and copulative, the word after it should be *accusative too*.

As an illustration of the last two rules, take the two following sentences:

- (a) Caius turned the orator out.
- (b) Caius turned out an orator.

Now in (a) the orator was a *different* person from Caius, and done something to by Caius; so orator should be *accusative* in Latin, and the sentence run thus: Caius *oratorem* ejecit.

But in (b) the orator was the *same person* as Caius; consequently orator remains *nominative* in Latin, and the sentence should run thus: Caius *orator* evasit.

PART I.

LATIN DIFFICULTIES FOR BEGINNERS.

CHAPTER I.

INFLEXION.

1. 'Inflexion' may be defined as 'change (*i.e.* modification) of ending to express change (*i.e.* modification) of meaning.'

2. The great difference between Latin and English is that Latin uses *inflexion* very much, but English hardly at all.

3. The Latin language *inflects* its words, where English uses prepositions and auxiliary verbs before them :

e.g. Mens-*a* = a table, am-*o* = I love.

Mens-*ae* = *of* a table, am-*abo* = I *shall* love.

4. A Latin inflected word consists of *two* parts, *stem* and *ending*: in this respect it may be compared to a *tree*. Just as a tree has *trunk and branches* which do not change, and *leaves*, which fall in autumn, and *fresh* ones come in spring; so the *stem* of a Latin word does not change, but the *endings* do: the *stem* is the *trunk and branches* of the tree, the *endings* the *leaves*.

5. The stem of a Latin *noun* and *adjective* is found by cutting off the ending of the *genitive singular*; what is left is the stem, and on to this the various case-endings are affixed:

e.g. Lapis, Gen. Lapid-is, Stem Lapid-

Felix, Gen. Felic-is, Stem Felic-.

CHAPTER II.

NOUNS AND DECLENSIONS.

A.

1. The *five declensions* are the five classes into which Latin nouns are divided, each distinguished by the ending of the *genitive singular*, or *characteristic vowel*.

2. In Greece the 'character' was the stamp or mark on coin, which distinguished one from the other; so the *characteristic vowel* is the vowel that distinguishes one declension in Latin from another.

3. The following is a table of the endings of the genitive singular, and of the characteristic vowels.

Decl.	1	2	3	4	5
Gen.	æ	i	is	ūs	ei
Vow.	a	o	ē or i	u	ē

4. There are *six cases* in Latin, each showing some relation to the other words in the sentence; the preposition, which in English is put before the noun, is called the *sign* of the case, and corresponds to the case-ending; the six cases are as follows:

Nominative; case of	<i>naming</i>	; sign	<i>none</i>
Vocative ; „	<i>calling</i>	; „	<i>O</i>
Accusative ; „	<i>object</i>	; „	<i>none</i>
Genitive ; „	<i>possession</i>	; „	<i>Of</i>
Dative ; „	<i>giving</i>	; „	To or for
Ablative ; „	<i>taking away</i>	; „	By, with, from, & in.

5. The six following rules may serve to *classify* the various case-endings, before learning the table in (6), or the Latin nouns themselves; and to avoid *gross* mistakes in case-endings on the part of pupils.

(a) All *Vocatives* are the same as nominatives, except *e* from *us*, and *i* from *ius* in the second declension.

(b) All *Accusatives singular* end in *m*,
 „ *plural* „ *s*,
 {except *Neuter* nouns; see (f.)}.

(c) All *Ablatives singular* end in the *characteristic vowel*.

(d) All *Genitives plural* end in *-um*.

(e) *Datives and Ablatives Plural* of the first two declensions end in *-is*; of the last three in *-bus*.

(f) *Neuter* nouns have the same *accusative singular* as *nominative*; and their nominatives, vocatives, and accusatives *plural* end in *short a*.

Singular.

Table of case-endings	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>m.</i>	names of males	ūs, er	er, or, os es (increasing) o (exc. do, go, io)	ūs	dies = a day
Nom. <i>f.</i>	ă	a few in us	as, aus, is, x es (not incr.) s (after cons.)	a few in us	es
<i>n.</i>	none	um	l. a. n. c. e. t. ar, ur, us	u	none
Voc.	as nom.	e from us	as nom.	as nom.	as nom.
Acc.	am	um	em	um	em
Gen.	ae	i	is	ūs	ei
Dat.	ae	o	i	ui	ei
Abl.	ă	ō	ě or ī	u	ě

Plural.

Table of case-endings	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>m.</i>	ae	i	es	ūs	es
Nom. <i>f.</i>	ae	i	es	ūs	es
<i>n.</i>	none	ă	ă or iă	uă	none
Voc.	as nom.	as nom.	as nom.	as nom.	as nom.
Acc.	as	os Neut. ă	es Neut. ă or iă	ūs Neut. uă	es
Gen.	arum	orum	um or ium	uum	erum
Dat.	is	is	ibus	ibus or ubus	ebus
Abl.	is	is	ibus	ibus or ubus	ebus

B.

PECULIARITIES OF DECLENSIONS.

1. (a) Nouns of the *first* declension, which have a corresponding noun in the second, make their dative and ablative plural in *-abus* instead of *-is*.

e.g. *filia* = a daughter: Dat. Pl. *filiabus*, to distinguish it from *filiis* = to or for *sons*.

See also appendix A.

(b) We sometimes find the genitive singular in *aī* instead of *ae*, especially in Lucretius.

e.g. *aquāī* for *aquae* = of water.

(c) The genitives plural of words compounded of *-cola* and *-gena* is sometimes contracted into *-um*; so also of names of people.

e.g. *coelicola*—*coelicolūm*,
terrigena—*terrigenūm*,
Lapithae—*Lapithūm*,

(d) N.B. *Pater familias* makes Gen. *Patris familias*, the *-as* being an old form of the genitive ending *-ae*: consequently the word remains *familias* all through, *pater* only changing.

2. (a) Nouns of the *second* declension in *-ius* contract the *-ie* of the vocative singular into *-i*.

Note also *meus*, Voc. *mī*.

e.g. O my son = *mī fili*.

See also Appendix B.

(b) Words denoting coins, measures, sums, weights often contract their genitive plurals into *-um*; as also do names of trades, &c.

e.g. *nummus*—*nummūm*, *talentum*—*talentūm*.

So, the chief of the smiths = *praefectus fabrūm*.

3. (a) Nouns of the *third* declension, which *increase* in the genitive, *i.e.* have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative, make their genitive plural in *-um*; unless they come from a nominative in *s impure*, *i.e.* *s* with a consonant

before it. Those from *s impure*, and those which do *not* increase in the genitive, make their genitive plural in *-ium*.

e.g. Miles, G. militis, G. Pl. militum,
Mons, G. montis, G. Pl. montium,
Civis, G. Civis, G. Pl. civium.

For *exceptions* see 'Rhymes on special rules' in Appendix C and D.

(b) Neuter nouns in -e, -al, -ar make
ablative singular in -i,
nominative plural in -iă,
genitive „ in -ium.

4. (a) Dissyllables of the *fourth* declension in -cus prefer -ubus to -ibus in the dative and ablative plural and so do

artus = limbs,	tribus = tribe,
partus = birth,	veru = spit.
portus = harbour,	

(b) Domus = house, is more like decl. 4 than 2; but ablative singular is always *domo*, and accusative plural prefers *domos*.
N.B. domi = at home. See also Appendix E and F.

5. (a) All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except dies = a day, which is common in the singular, masculine *only* in the plural: 'meridies = noonday' is the same.

(b) Only *res* and *dies* have increasing cases in the plural. See also Appendix G.

C.

NOUNS OF DECLENSION III.

As the nouns of the *third* declension present an infinite variety, and pupils often think that nouns that have the same ending in the nominative have also the same *stem*, it has been thought useful to class them according to the endings of the *nominative* in the following tables.

1. Nouns in -as :

as	assis <i>m.</i>	= penny
adamas	adamantis <i>m.</i>	= adamant

anas	anātis <i>f.</i>	= duck
aestas	aestātis <i>f.</i>	= summer
aetas	aetātis <i>f.</i>	= age
elephas	elephantis <i>m.</i>	= elephant
mas	māris <i>m.</i>	= male
simultas	simultātis <i>f.</i>	= rivalry
tempestas	tempestātis <i>f.</i>	= tempest
vas	vādis <i>m.</i>	= bail
vas	vāsis <i>n.</i>	= vessel

2. *Nouns in -es* (increasing):

ales	alītis <i>c.</i>	= bird
antistes	antistītis <i>c.</i>	= overseer
Ceres	Cerēris <i>f.</i>	= Ceres
comes	comītis <i>c.</i>	= companion
compes	compēdis <i>f.</i>	= fetter
eques	equītis <i>m.</i>	= horse-soldier
gurgēs	gurgītis <i>m.</i>	= whirl-pool
herēs	herēdis <i>c.</i>	= heir, heiress
merces	mercēdis <i>f.</i>	= pay, hire
merges	mergītis <i>f.</i>	= sheaf
miles	milītis <i>m.</i>	= soldier
obsēs	obsīdis <i>c.</i>	= hostage
paries	pariētis <i>m.</i>	= house-wall
pedes	pedītis <i>m.</i>	= foot-soldier
pes	pēdis <i>m.</i>	= foot
praeses	praesīdis <i>c.</i>	= president
quies	quiētis <i>f.</i>	= repose
satelles	satellītis <i>c.</i>	= attendant
seges	segētis <i>f.</i>	= crop
stipes	stipītis <i>m.</i>	= log
teges	tegītis <i>f.</i>	= mat

3. *Nouns in -is* (increasing):

cinis	cinēris <i>m.</i>	= ashes
cucumis	cucumēris <i>m.</i>	= cucumber
glis	gliris <i>m.</i>	= dormouse

lapis	lapīdis <i>m.</i>	= stone
lis	litis <i>f.</i>	= strife
pulvis	pulvĕris <i>m.</i>	= dust
sanguis	sanguīnis <i>m.</i>	= blood
vomis	vomĕris <i>m.</i>	= plough-share

All other nouns in *-is* have the *same genitive as nominative*.

N.B. *civis* = citizen : *G. civis* (*not civitis*).

4. *Nouns in -os :*

arbos	arbōris <i>f.</i>	= tree
cos	cōtis <i>f.</i>	= whet-stone
custos	custōdis <i>c.</i>	= guardian
dos	dōtis <i>f.</i>	= dowry
flos	flōris <i>m.</i>	= flower
honos	honōris <i>m.</i>	= honour
mos	mōris <i>m.</i>	= custom
nepos	nepōtis <i>m.</i>	= grandson
sacerdos	sacerdōtis <i>c.</i>	= { priest or priestess

5. *Nouns in -us :*

corpus	corpōris <i>n.</i>	= body
crus	crūris <i>n.</i>	= leg
facinus	facinōris <i>n.</i>	= deed
fenus	fenōris <i>n.</i>	= interest
frigus	frigōris <i>n.</i>	= frost, or cold
grus	grūis <i>c.</i>	= crane
incus	incūdis <i>f.</i>	= anvil
juventus	juventūtis <i>f.</i>	= youth
latus	latĕris <i>n.</i>	= side
lepus	lepōris <i>m.</i>	= hare
litus	litōris <i>n.</i>	= shore
mus	mūris <i>m.</i>	= mouse
nemus	nemōris <i>n.</i>	= grove
olus	olĕris <i>n.</i>	= pot-herbs
onus	onĕris <i>n.</i>	= burden
opus	opĕris <i>n.</i>	= a work
palus	palūdis <i>f.</i>	= marsh

pecus	pecūdis <i>f.</i>	= beast
pecus	pecōris <i>n.</i>	= cattle
pignus	pignōris <i>n.</i>	= pledge
pondus	pondēris <i>n.</i>	= weight
salus	salūtis <i>f.</i>	= health, safety
scelus	scelēris <i>n.</i>	= wickedness
servitus	servitūtis <i>f.</i>	= slavery
sus	sūs <i>c.</i>	= pig
tellus	tellūris <i>f.</i>	= earth
tempus	tempōris <i>n.</i>	= time
ulcus	ulcēris <i>n.</i>	= sore, ulcer
virtus	virtūtis <i>f.</i>	= virtue
vulnus	vulnēris <i>n.</i>	= wound

6. *Nouns in -o :*

bubo	bubōnis <i>m.</i>	= owl
cardo	cardīnis <i>m.</i>	= hinge
caro	carnis <i>f.</i>	= flesh
caupo	caupōnis <i>m.</i>	= inn-keeper
concio	conciōnis <i>f.</i>	= assembly
grando	grandīnis <i>f.</i>	= hail
homo	homīnis (<i>not -onis</i>) <i>c.</i>	= man
imago	imagīnis <i>f.</i>	= image
latro	latrōnis <i>m.</i>	= robber
leo	leōnis <i>m.</i>	= lion
ligo	ligōnis <i>m.</i>	= mattock
margo	margīnis <i>c.</i>	= margin
mucro	mucrōnis <i>m.</i>	= sword-point
ordo	ordīnis <i>m.</i>	= rank
papilio	papiliōnis <i>m.</i>	= butterfly
praedo	praedōnis <i>m.</i>	= pirate
pugio	pugīōnis <i>m.</i>	= dagger
ratio	rationis <i>f.</i>	= reason
scipio	scipiōnis <i>m.</i>	= staff
stellio	stelliōnis <i>m.</i>	= newt
vespertilio	vespertiliōnis <i>m.</i>	= bat
virgo	virgīnis <i>f.</i>	= maiden

7. *Nouns in -x :*

apex	apĭcis <i>m.</i>	= peak
auspex	auspĭcis <i>m.</i>	= omen-giver
calix	calĭcis <i>m.</i>	= goblet
cervix	cervĭcis <i>f.</i>	= neck
conjug	conjūgis <i>c.</i>	= spouse
dux	dūcis <i>c.</i>	= leader
fax	fācis <i>f.</i>	= torch
faex	faecis <i>f.</i>	= dregs
forfex	forfĭcis <i>f.</i>	= shears
fornix	fornĭcis <i>m.</i>	= arch
(frux)	frūgis <i>f.</i>	= fruit
grex	grēgis <i>m.</i>	= flock
imbrex	imbrĭcis <i>c.</i>	= tile
ilex	ilĭcis <i>f.</i>	= holm-oak
judex	judĭcis <i>c.</i>	= judge
lex	lēgis <i>f.</i>	= law
lux	lūcis <i>f.</i>	= light
nex	nēcis <i>f.</i>	= death
nix	nĭvis <i>f.</i>	= snow
nox	noctis <i>f.</i>	= night
nux	nūcis <i>f.</i>	= nut
obex	obĭcis <i>c.</i>	= bolt
pax	pācis <i>f.</i>	= peace
pumex	pumĭcis <i>c.</i>	= pumice
radix	radicis <i>f.</i>	= root
remex	remĭgis <i>m.</i>	= rower
rumex	rumĭcis <i>c.</i>	= sorrel
rex	rēgis <i>m.</i>	= king
silex	silĭcis <i>c.</i>	= flint
strix	strĭgis <i>m.</i>	= screech-owl
supellex	supellectilis <i>f.</i>	= furniture
vertex	vertĭcis <i>m.</i>	= head, summit
vervex	vervēcis <i>m.</i>	= wether
vortex	vortĭcis <i>m.</i>	= whirlpool
vox	vōcis <i>f.</i>	= voice

8. *Nouns in -s (impure).*

ars	artis <i>f.</i>	= art
auceps	aucūpis <i>m.</i>	= fowler
bidens	bidentis <i>m.</i>	= fork
bidens	bidentis <i>f.</i>	= sheep
chalyps	chalýbis <i>m.</i>	= steel
cliens	clientis <i>m.</i>	= client
dens	dentis <i>m.</i>	= tooth
dodrans	dodrantis <i>m.</i>	= nine ounces
fons	fontis <i>m.</i>	= fountain
forceps	forcīpis <i>c.</i>	= pincers
frons	frondis <i>f.</i>	= leaf
frons	frontis <i>f.</i>	= forehead
gryps	grýphis <i>m.</i>	= griffin
hydrops	hydrōpis <i>m.</i>	= dropsy
mons	montis <i>m.</i>	= mountain
occīdens	occidentis <i>m.</i>	= west
oriens	orientis <i>m.</i>	= east
pons	pontis <i>m.</i>	= bridge
praeceps (adj.)	præcipītis	= headlong
princeps	princīpis <i>c.</i>	= chief
rudens	rudentis <i>m.</i>	= cable
stirps	stirpis <i>f.</i>	= stock
torrens	torrentis <i>m.</i>	= torrent
trabs	trabis <i>f.</i>	= beam
tridens	tridentis <i>m.</i>	= trident
triens	trientis <i>m.</i>	= four ounces
urbs	urbis <i>f.</i>	= city

9. *Various endings.*

aes	aeris <i>n.</i>	= brass
caput	capītis (<i>not</i> -utis) <i>n.</i>	= head
cor	cordis <i>n.</i>	= heart
ebur	ebōris <i>n.</i>	= ivory
far	farris <i>n.</i>	= flour
femur	femōris (or -īnis) <i>n.</i>	= thigh
frāter	frātris <i>m.</i>	= brother

fūr	fūris <i>m.</i>	= thief
īter	itinēris <i>n.</i>	= journey
jecur	jecōris (or -inōris) <i>n.</i>	= liver
lac	lactis <i>n.</i>	= milk
laus	laudis <i>f.</i>	= praise
mare	māris <i>n.</i>	= sea
māter	mātris <i>f.</i>	= mother
mel	mellis <i>n.</i>	= honey
nomen	nomīnis (<i>not</i> -enis) <i>n.</i>	= name
pāter	pātris <i>m.</i>	= father
praes	praedis <i>m.</i>	= bondsman
rēte	retis <i>n.</i>	= net
sal	sālis <i>m.</i>	= salt
sol	sōlis <i>m.</i>	= sun
splen	splēnis <i>m.</i>	= milt
ver	vēris <i>n.</i>	= springtide

D.

VARIANT I NOUNS.

1. securis <i>f.</i>	= axe	acc. -em or -im, abl. i.
2. Ædilis <i>m.</i>	= Ædile	} accusative -em, ablative -i.
canalis <i>m.</i>	= canal	
3. amussis <i>f.</i>	= rule	} accusative -im, ablative -i.
sitis <i>f.</i>	= thirst	
tussis <i>f.</i>	= cough	
4. imber <i>m.</i>	= shower	} accusative -em, ablative -e or -i.
linter <i>f.</i>	= boat	
uter <i>m.</i>	= wine-skin	
venter <i>m.</i>	= belly	
5. classis <i>f.</i>	= fleet	} accusative -em or -im, ablative -e or -i.
clavis <i>f.</i>	= key	
febris <i>f.</i>	= fever	
messis <i>f.</i>	= harvest	
navis <i>f.</i>	= ship	
puppis <i>f.</i>	= stern	

E.

There are many words in Latin which *sound* very much alike, but have widely different *meanings*. This similarity of sound and spelling often causes pupils to produce really *grotesque* translations. For the better avoidance of such mistakes, we will here give a list of what may be called, for want of a better name,

Symphonious Nouns, &c.

acus	acūs <i>f.</i>	= needle
arcus	arcūs <i>m.</i>	= bow
arx	arcis <i>f.</i>	= citadel
aes	aeris <i>n.</i>	= brass
aër	aëris <i>m.</i>	= air
aetas	aetātis <i>f.</i>	= age
aestas	aestātis <i>f.</i>	= summer
aestus	aestūs <i>m.</i>	= heat, surge
ager	agri <i>m.</i>	= field
agger	aggēris <i>m.</i>	= mound
anguis	anguis <i>c.</i>	= snake
sanguis	sanguīnis <i>m.</i>	= blood
unguis	unguis <i>m.</i>	= claw
alvus	alvi <i>f.</i>	= paunch
alveus	alvei <i>m.</i>	= channel
anceps	ancipitis (adj.)	= doubtful
auceps	aucūpis <i>m.</i>	= fowler
ansa	ansae <i>f.</i>	= handle
anser	ansēris <i>m.</i>	= goose
anus	anūs <i>f.</i>	= old woman
annus	anni <i>m.</i>	= year
anulus	anuli <i>m.</i>	= ring
angulus	anguli <i>m.</i>	= corner

ăpex	apĭcis <i>m.</i>	= cap, peak
ăpis	apis <i>f.</i>	= bee
ăpium	apii <i>n.</i>	= parsley
arma (pl.)	armorum <i>n.</i>	= arms
armus	armi <i>m.</i>	= shoulder-blade
armentum	armenti <i>n.</i>	= herd
ars	artis <i>f.</i>	= art
artus (pl.)	artuum <i>m.</i>	= limbs
artus	arta artum (adj.)	= tight
aura	aurae <i>f.</i>	= breeze
aurum	auri <i>n.</i>	= gold
auris	auris <i>f.</i>	= ear
ăvus	avi <i>m.</i>	= grandfather
ăvis	avis <i>f.</i>	= bird
caepe	caepis <i>n.</i>	= onion
saepes	saepis <i>f.</i>	= hedge
callis	callis <i>m.</i>	= foot-path
caulis	caulis <i>m.</i>	= stalk
collis	collis <i>m.</i>	= hill
collum	colli <i>n.</i>	= neck
călidus	-a -um (adj.)	= hot
callidus	-a -um (adj.)	= shrewd
călo	calōnis <i>m.</i>	= camp-follower
călor	calōris <i>m.</i>	= heat
călor	colōris <i>m.</i>	= colour
cănis	canis <i>c.</i>	= dog
cănus	cana canum (adj.)	= white
căro	carnis <i>f.</i>	= flesh
cardo	cardinis <i>m.</i>	= hinge
căsa	casae <i>f.</i>	= cottage
căseus	casei <i>m.</i>	= cheese

cauda	caudae <i>f.</i>	= tail
caudex	caudicis <i>m.</i>	= trunk
cervus	cervi <i>m.</i>	= stag
servus	servi <i>m.</i>	= slave
cīvis	civis (not -itis) <i>c.</i>	= citizen
civitas	civitatis <i>f.</i>	= state
cōma	comae <i>f.</i>	= hair, foliage
cōmes	comitis <i>c.</i>	= companion
cōmis	come (adj.)	= courteous
concīlium	concilii <i>n.</i>	= council
consīlium	consilii <i>n.</i>	= counsel
convīva	convivae <i>c.</i>	= guest
convivium	convivii <i>n.</i>	= banquet
culmus	culmi <i>m.</i>	= stalk
culmen	culminis <i>n.</i>	= top
currus	currūs <i>m.</i>	= chariot
cursus	cursūs <i>m.</i>	= course
dēcor	decōris <i>m.</i>	= grace
dēcus	decōris <i>n.</i>	= ornament
dīvus	divi <i>m.</i>	= god
diva	divae <i>f.</i>	= goddess
dīves	divitis (adj.)	= rich
dōlus	doli <i>m.</i>	= deceit
dōlor	dolōris <i>m.</i>	= pain
ēquus	equi <i>m.</i>	= horse
ēqua	equae <i>f.</i>	= mare
ēques	equitis <i>m.</i>	= horse-man
aequus	aequa aequum (adj.)	= just
fāma	famae <i>f.</i>	= fame, report
fāmes	famis <i>f.</i>	= hunger

far	farris <i>n.</i>	= flour
fur	fūris <i>m.</i>	= thief
fascia	fasciae <i>f.</i>	= girdle
fascis	fascis <i>m.</i>	= bundle
fax	fācis <i>f.</i>	= torch
faex	faecis <i>f.</i>	= dregs
faux	faucis <i>f.</i>	= jaw, defile (pl.)
fēnum	feni <i>n.</i>	= hay
fēnus	fenōris <i>n.</i>	= interest
ferrum	ferri <i>n.</i>	= iron
fērus	fera ferum (adj.)	= fierce
fērax	ferācis (adj.)	= fruitful
fērox	ferōcis (adj.)	= fierce
ficus	ficūs <i>f.</i>	= fig-tree
fōcus	foci <i>m.</i>	= hearth
fūcus	fuci <i>m.</i>	= dye
fīdes	fīdis <i>f.</i>	= lute
fīdes	fidei <i>f.</i>	= faith
filius	filii <i>m.</i>	= son
filum	fili <i>n.</i>	= thread
finis	finis <i>c.</i>	= end, territories
fūnis	funis <i>m.</i>	= cable
fūnus	funēris <i>n.</i>	= death
flamma	flammae <i>f.</i>	= flame
flāmen	flamīnis <i>n.</i>	= blast, priest, <i>m.</i>
flūmen	flumīnis <i>n.</i>	= river
fulmen	fulmīnis <i>n.</i>	= lightning
flātus	flatūs <i>m.</i>	= blast
flētus	fletūs <i>m.</i>	= weeping
fōlium	folii <i>n.</i>	= leaf
follis	follis <i>m.</i>	= purse, bellows
fel	fellis <i>n.</i>	= gall

fornax	fornācis <i>f.</i>	= furnace
fornix	fornīcis <i>m.</i>	= arch
fōrum	fori <i>n.</i>	= market-place
fōrus	fori <i>m.</i>	= deck
fōres (pl.)	forium <i>f.</i>	= door
fōras	(adverb)	= out of doors
fors	fortis <i>f.</i>	= chance
fortis	forte (adj.)	= strong
frāga	fragorum <i>n.</i> (pl.)	= strawberries
frāgor	fragōris <i>m.</i>	= crash
frustā	frustorum <i>n.</i>	= small pieces
frustrā	(adverb)	= in vain
fulgor	fulgōris <i>m.</i>	= brightness
fulgur	fulgūris <i>n.</i>	= lightning
gĕlu	gelūs <i>n.</i>	= frost, cold
gĕnu	genūs <i>n.</i>	= knee
gratia	gratiae <i>f.</i>	= favour
gratiæ	(plural)	= thanks
grates		
gratias habere	= to <i>feel</i> thankful.	
gratias agere	= to <i>return</i> thanks.	
gratiam referre	= to <i>repay</i> a kindness.	
grando	grandīnis <i>f.</i>	= hail
grandis	grande (adj.)	= large
hostia	hostiae <i>f.</i>	= victim
hostis	hostis <i>c.</i>	= enemy
hāmus	hami <i>m.</i>	= hook
hūmus	humi <i>f.</i>	= ground
hūmerus	humeri <i>m.</i>	= shoulder
imber	imbris <i>m.</i>	= shower
imbrex	imbrīcis <i>c.</i>	= tile

index	indĭcis	= informer
vindex	vindĭcis	= avenger
incōla	incolae <i>c.</i>	= inhabitant
insŭla	insulae <i>f.</i>	= island
juvencus	juvenci <i>m.</i>	= steer
juventus	juventŭtis <i>f.</i>	= youth
juvĕnis	juvenis <i>m.</i>	= a youth
lācerta	lacertae <i>f.</i>	= lizard
lācertus	lacerti <i>m.</i>	= arm
lācer	lacera lacerum (adj.)	= torn
lāna	lanae <i>f.</i>	= wool
lŭna	lunae <i>f.</i>	= moon
lātex	latĭcis <i>m.</i>	= water
lāter	latĕris <i>m.</i>	= brick
lātus	latĕris <i>n.</i>	= side
lātus	lata latum (adj.)	= wide
lēpor	lepōris <i>m.</i>	= wit
lēpus	lepōris <i>m.</i>	= hare
lēvis	leve (adj.)	= smooth
lēvis	leve (adj.)	= light (in weight)
lex	lēgis <i>f.</i>	= law
lux	lŭcis <i>f.</i>	= light (of day)
libra	librae <i>f.</i>	= pound
liber	libri <i>m.</i>	= book
libĕri (pl.)	liberorum <i>m.</i>	= children
liber	libĕra liberum (adj.)	= free
limen	limĭnis <i>n.</i>	= threshold
lŭmen	lumĭnis <i>n.</i>	= light
linter	lintris <i>f.</i>	= boat
linteum	lintei <i>n.</i>	= napkin
lis	litis <i>f.</i>	= strife
litus	litōris <i>n.</i>	= shore

<i>lōcus</i>	<i>loci m.</i>	= place
<i>lūcus</i>	<i>luci m.</i>	= grove
<i>luctus</i>	<i>luctūs m.</i>	= grief
<i>māla</i>	<i>malae f.</i>	= jaw
<i>mālus</i>	<i>mali f.</i>	= mast, apple-tree
<i>mālum</i>	<i>mali n.</i>	= an apple
<i>mālus</i>	<i>mala malum (adj.)</i>	= bad
<i>mānes</i>	<i>manium m.</i>	= shades
<i>mānus</i>	<i>manūs f.</i>	= hand
<i>mas</i>	<i>māris m.</i>	= male
<i>mare</i>	<i>māris n.</i>	= sea
<i>mens</i>	<i>mentis f.</i>	= mind
<i>mentum</i>	<i>menti n.</i>	= chin
<i>mensa</i>	<i>mensae f.</i>	= table
<i>mensis</i>	<i>mensis m.</i>	= month
<i>merx</i>	<i>mercis f.</i>	= wares
<i>merces</i>	<i>mercēdis f.</i>	= pay, hire
<i>miles</i>	<i>milītis m.</i>	= soldier
<i>mille</i>	(indeclinable)	= thousand
<i>mōla</i>	<i>molae f.</i>	= salt-meal
<i>mōles</i>	<i>molis f.</i>	= mass, pier
<i>mōra</i>	<i>morae f.</i>	= delay
<i>mōrus, -um</i>	<i>mori f. and n.</i>	= blackberry
<i>mos</i>	<i>mōris m.</i>	= custom
<i>mors</i>	<i>mortis f.</i>	= death
<i>mūlier</i>	<i>mulieris f.</i>	= woman
<i>mūlio</i>	<i>mulionis m.</i>	= mule-driver
<i>mullus</i>	<i>mulli m.</i>	= mullet
<i>mūrus</i>	<i>muri m.</i>	= wall
<i>mus</i>	<i>mūris m.</i>	= mouse
<i>nāvis</i>	<i>navis f.</i>	= ship
<i>nāvita</i>	<i>navitae m.</i>	= sailor
<i>nauta</i>	<i>nautae m.</i>	= sailor

nex	nēcis <i>f.</i>	= death
nix	nīvis <i>f.</i>	= snow
nox	noctis <i>f.</i>	= night
nux	nūcis <i>f.</i>	= nut
nīdus	nidi <i>m.</i>	= nest
nīdor	nidōris <i>m.</i>	= steam
nōdus	nodi <i>m.</i>	= knot
nūdus	nuda nudum (adj.)	= naked
nōmen	nomīnis <i>n.</i>	= name
nūmen	numīnis <i>n.</i>	= deity
nōtus	noti <i>m.</i>	= south-wind
nōtus	nota notum (adj.)	= known
olla	ollae <i>f.</i>	= jar
ōlor	olōris <i>m.</i>	= swan
ōlus	olēris <i>n.</i>	= pot-herbs
Ops	opis <i>f.</i>	= resources
ōpus	opēris <i>n.</i>	= a work
ōpēra	operae <i>f.</i>	= labour
ōperae	operarum <i>f.</i>	= work-people
os	ōris <i>n.</i>	= face, mouth
os	ossis <i>n.</i>	= bone
ōra	orae <i>f.</i>	= coast
ostium	ostii <i>n.</i>	= entrance
ostrea	ostreae <i>f.</i>	= oyster
ostrum	ostri <i>n.</i>	= purple
ōvum	ovi <i>n.</i>	= egg
ōvis	ovis <i>c.</i>	= sheep
pāla	palae <i>f.</i>	= garden-tool
pālus	pali <i>m.</i>	= stake
pālus	palūdis <i>f.</i>	= marsh
passer	passēris <i>m.</i>	= sparrow
passus	passūs <i>m.</i>	= pace

păter	pătris <i>m.</i>	= father
pătera	paterae <i>f.</i>	= bowl
păvo	pavōnis <i>m.</i>	= peacock
păvor	pavōris <i>m.</i>	= fear
pectus	pectōris <i>n.</i>	= breast
pecten	pectīnis <i>m.</i>	= comb
pēcus	pecūdis <i>f.</i>	= cattle
pēcus	pecōris <i>m.</i>	= beast
pēdica	pedicae <i>f.</i>	= snare
pēdes	pedītis <i>m.</i>	= foot-soldier
pes	pēdis <i>m.</i>	= foot
pellis	pellis <i>f.</i>	= hide
pelvis	pelvis <i>f.</i>	= basin
pulvis	pulvērīs <i>m.</i>	= dust
pīla	pilae <i>f.</i>	= pillar
pīla	pilae <i>f.</i>	= ball
pīlus	pili <i>m.</i>	= a hair
pīlus	pili <i>m.</i>	= a rank
pīlum	pili <i>n.</i>	= javelin
pīleus	pīlei <i>m.</i>	= cap
pollen	pollīnis <i>n.</i>	= fine flour
pollex	pollīcis <i>m.</i>	= thumb
pollens	pollentis (adj.)	= strong
pons	pontis <i>m.</i>	= bridge
pontus	ponti <i>m.</i>	= sea
pōpulus	populi <i>f.</i>	= poplar
pōpulus	populi <i>m.</i>	= people
populi	populorum (pl.)	= tribes
porta	portae <i>f.</i>	= gate
portus	portūs <i>m.</i>	= harbour
postis	postis <i>m.</i>	= door-post
pestis	pestis <i>f.</i>	= plague

praelium	praelii <i>n.</i>	= battle
prelum	preli <i>n.</i>	= wine-press
praes	praedis <i>m.</i>	= bondsman
praeda	praedae <i>f.</i>	= booty
praedo	praedōnis <i>m.</i>	= pirate
præmium	præmii <i>n.</i>	= reward
pröcæmium	pröcæmii <i>n.</i>	= prelude
pœna	pœnae <i>f.</i>	= punishment
paene (adv.)		= almost
pēnus	peni (-us, -ōris)	= victuals
pūteus	putei <i>m.</i>	= well
pūter	putris putre (adj.)	= crumbling
pugna	pugnae <i>f.</i>	= fight
pugnus	pugni <i>m.</i>	= fist
quālis	qualis (inter.)	= of what sort?
quālus	quali <i>m.</i>	= wool-basket
rāmus	rami <i>m.</i>	= bough
rēmus	remi <i>m.</i>	= oar
rastrum	rastri <i>n.</i>	= harrow
rostrum	rostri <i>n.</i>	= beak
rutrum	rutri <i>n.</i>	= spade
rātis	ratis <i>f.</i>	= raft, ship
rātus	rata ratum (adj.)	= ratified
rēmex	remīgis <i>m.</i>	= rower
rūmex	rumīcis <i>f.</i>	= sorrel
rēus	rei <i>m.</i>	= accused person
res	rēi <i>f.</i>	= thing
sal	sālis <i>n.</i>	= salt
sāles	salium <i>m.</i>	= wit
sālus	salūtis <i>f.</i>	= safety, health
sēta	setae <i>f.</i>	= bristle
sītis	sitis <i>f.</i>	= thirst

sīler	silēris <i>n.</i>	= osier
sīlex	silīcis <i>m.</i>	= flint
īlex	ilīcis <i>f.</i>	= holm-oak
sol	sōlis <i>m.</i>	= sun
sōlum	soli <i>n.</i>	= ground
sōlus	sola solum (adj.)	= alone
sōlītus	solita solitum (adj.)	= accustomed
somnus	somni <i>m.</i>	= sleep
somnium	somnii <i>n.</i>	= dream
sūpellex	supellectilis <i>f.</i>	= furniture
supplex	supplicis <i>c.</i>	= suppliant
supplīcium	supplicii <i>n.</i>	= punishment
supplicatio	supplicationis <i>f.</i>	= { humiliation thanksgiving
tālus	tali <i>m.</i>	= ankle, dice (pl.)
tālis	tale (adj.)	= such
taurus	tauri <i>m.</i>	= bull
tōrus	tori <i>m.</i>	= couch
tēla	telaē <i>f.</i>	= web
tēlum	teli <i>n.</i>	= weapon
tempus	tempōris <i>n.</i>	= time
tēpor	tepōris <i>m.</i>	= heat
testa	testae <i>f.</i>	= jar
testis	testis <i>c.</i>	= witness
torris	torris <i>m.</i>	= fire-brand
turris	turris <i>f.</i>	= tower
turba	turbae <i>f.</i>	= crowd
turbo	turbīnis <i>m.</i>	= whirlwind
uligo	uligīnis <i>f.</i>	= moisture
fuligo	fuligīnis <i>f.</i>	= soot
vallum	valli <i>n.</i>	= rampart
vallis	vallis <i>f.</i>	= valley

vas	vādis <i>m.</i>	= bail
vas	vāsis <i>n.</i>	= vase
venter	ventris <i>m.</i>	= belly
ventus	venti <i>m.</i>	= wind
ventum est	(imp. verb)	= it was come
ver	vēris <i>n.</i>	= spring-tide
verna	vernae <i>m.</i>	= home-born slave
vēru	verūs <i>n.</i>	= spit
vērūm	veri <i>n.</i>	= truth
vērūtum	veruti <i>n.</i>	= javelin
vermis	vermis <i>m.</i>	= worm
vōmis	vomēris <i>m.</i>	= plough-share
vertex	vertīcis <i>m.</i>	= peak, head
vortex	vortīcis <i>m.</i>	= whirlpool
vespa	vespae <i>f.</i>	= wasp
vesper	vespēris (or i) <i>m.</i>	= evening
Vesta	Vestae <i>f.</i>	= Vesta
vestis	vestis <i>f.</i>	= garment
via	vīae <i>f.</i>	= way
vīta	vitae <i>f.</i>	= life
vītis	vitis <i>f.</i>	= vine
vītium	vitii <i>n.</i>	= fault
vīri (pl.)	viros (acc.) <i>m.</i>	= men
vīres (pl.)	virium <i>f.</i>	= strength
vīrus	virī <i>n.</i>	= juice, poison
virga	virgae <i>f.</i>	= rod, wand
virgo	virgīnis <i>f.</i>	= maiden
vōluntas	voluntatis <i>f.</i>	= will, wish
vōluptas	voluptatis <i>f.</i>	= pleasure
vultus	vultūs <i>m.</i>	= countenance
vultis	(irreg. verb)	= ye wish

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVES.

A.

1. Latin adjectives may conveniently be divided into *three* classes.

(a) Those of *three* terminations.

(b) Those of *two* terminations.

(c) Those of *one* termination.

2. Adjectives of *three* terminations have a separate ending for the masculine, feminine, and neuter; the masculine and neuter endings follow those of the *second* declension, the feminine those of the *first*.

3. Adjectives of *two* terminations have the same ending for the masculine and feminine, but a separate one for the neuter, all of which follow the *third* declension.

N.B.—It is easier to treat *acer* as an adjective of *two* terminations—like *tristis*—with a special nominative masculine singular.

4. Adjectives of *one* termination have the same ending for masculine, feminine, and neuter, all of which follow the third declension; but the pupil should be reminded that the neuter accusative singular is the same as the nominative, and that those cases have *two* endings in the plural, viz. -es and -iā.

5. Latin being, as we have said, an *inflected* language, the use of the Latin adjective is widely different from that of the English. For whereas the English adjective *never* changes its

form, except sometimes in comparison, the Latin adjective always varies its endings in accordance with the Number, Gender, and Case of the noun with which it goes, or to which it refers.

6. This is what is known as the Agreement of the Adjective and Substantive; and, as beginners always have very great difficulty in carrying this out, it may be as well to append here a set of

RULES.

(a) Translate your *noun first*, being careful to put it in the proper *number and case*, and then look out its *gender*.

(b) Then look out the Latin for your *adjective*, and ask yourself what adjective you have learnt it is declined like, *i.e.* has the same ending in the nominative case.

(c) Put on to the *stem* of the adjective you have found the case-ending corresponding to the number, gender, and case of your noun, and you have the adjective as it should be.

7. All adjectives and participles in *-us* } like *bonus*.
and all *superlatives* are }

All adjectives in *-er* } like *niger*
[except those in (*B* 1)] } or *tener*.

*All adjectives in *-is* }
N.B. Ablative sing. *-i only* } like *tristis*.

*All comparatives are like *melior*.

*All adjectives in *-x* (only with }
change of vowel) } like *felix*.

*All adjectives in *-ns* }
and all *present participles* } like *ingens*.

* All these—except *melior*—have an *i* before the *-a* of the Neut. Pl., and the *-um* of the Gen. Pl.

8. The following are the chief points noticeable in connection with adjectives, and at which pupils most frequently stumble.

Adjectives like

tristis and *acer*.

Ablative -i, *never* -e; an *i* before the *ă* of the neuter plural, and -um of the genitive plural.

melior.

For neuter singular, change -or into -us; ablative *ě*, rarely -i; *no i* in the neuter and genitive plural.

felix.

Ablative -i, rarely -e; an *i* in the neuter and genitive plural.

ingens.

A participle used as an *adjective* makes ablative in -i; when it is used as a *verb*, in -e: an *i* in the neuter and genitive plural.

B.

PECULIARITIES OF ADJECTIVES.

1.	alacer	= brisk	} like <i>acer</i> : others in -er like <i>niger</i> or <i>tener</i> .
	campester	= level	
	celeber	= famous	
	celer	= swift	
	equester	= of horse	
	paluster	= marshy	
	pedester	= of foot	
	puter	= crumbling	
	saluber	= healthful	
	volucer	= winged	
2.	degener	= degenerate	} abl. sing. = i gen. pl. = um no neut. pl.
	inops	= destitute	
	memor	= mindful	
	uber	= fruitful	
	vigil	= wakeful	

3.	ales-ītis	= winged	} able sing. = e gen. pl. = um no neut. pl.
	compos-ōtis	= possessing	
	deses-īdis	= inactive	
	dives-ītis	= rich	
	impos-ōtis	= not possessing	
	pauper-ēris	= poor	
	puber-ēris	= of age	
	reses-īdis	= dormant	
	sospes-ītis	= safe	
	superstes-ītis	= surviving	

4.	frugi	= frugal	} indeclinable
	nequam	= worthless	

5. Adjectives of position spring from prepositions: as

extra — exterus = outside

infra — inferus = lower

post — posterus = latter

supra — superus = upper.

The other prepositions produce no positive; only comparative and superlative.

C.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.

1. To find *comparative* put -ior } on to stem of
To find *superlative* put -issimus } genitive positive.

1st excep. Adjectives in -er make superlative in -errimus.

2nd excep. Six adjectives in -ilis make superlative in -illimus.

3rd excep. Adjectives in -dicus, -ficus, and -volus make comparative in -entior and superlative in -entissimus.

4th excep. Adjectives in -us pure, i.e. us with a vowel before it, are not inflected, but take magis = 'more' before them for a comparative, and maxime = 'most' for a superlative.

2. The *irregular* comparisons had better be learnt from the grammar, Part II.: we will here merely notice the construction required after a comparative.

(a) 'Than' may be translated by 'quam,' but the word *after* it must be put in the *same case* as the word before it, with which it is compared.

e.g. Gold is cheaper *than* virtue.

Vilius est aurum *quam* virtus.

I love Balbus more *than* Caius.

Plus amo Balbum *quam* Caium.

N.B. 'Quam Caius' would mean 'I love Balbus more than Caius loves Balbus.'

(b) If 'than' be *not* translated, the word after it must be put in the *ablative* case.

e.g. Silver is cheaper *than* gold =

Vilius est argentum *auro*.

(c) 'Than' must *not* be left out with a *genitive, dative, or ablative*, even though the *sign* be not repeated after 'than.'

e.g. He is fonder of you *than* me =

Studiosior est tui *quam* mei.

He gives you more *than* me =

Plus tibi *quam* mihi dat.

He does more by fraud *than* force =

Plus fraude *quam* vi facit.

D.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. The numbers in Latin are of such a kind that they can only be learnt by heart from the grammar, Part II., and consequently rules can hardly be given. We may, however, notice one or two particulars in connection with them.

2. *Cardinal* numbers are derived from 'cardo = a hinge,' that is the number on which the others *hinge* or turn as a door does: the following are the chief endings.

Between 10 and 20 they end in *-decim* (but 19 = unus-deviginti).

Between 20 and 100 they end in *-inta*.

Between 100 and 1000 they end in *-enti*.

Note that the Latins said as we do—

Twenty-one = Viginti unus,
or One and twenty = Unus et viginti.

Also that mille = 1000
 duo millia = 2000
 (or bis mille = 2000),
e.g. 1000 men = mille homines
 2000 men = duo millia *hominum*
 (or bis mille *homines*).

3. *Ordinal* numbers are derived from 'ordo = rank,' and show the *order* in which things come. The most general ending of these numbers is *-esimus*.

Twentieth = vicesimus
A hundredth = centesimus
A thousandth = millesimus.

4. *Distributives* are used when so many *a-piece* is meant; and the Latins use these where we should only use the *Cardinal*; their general ending is *-eni*:

e.g. These beams are 20 feet long =
Hae trabes *vicenos* pedes longae sunt.

Note that if 'viginti' were used instead of 'vicenos,' it would mean that all the beams *put together* were 20 feet long.

5. The *numeral adverbs* mean 'so many times': their general ending is *-ies* or *-iens*.

Twenty times = vicies
A hundred times = centies
A thousand times = millies

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

A.

1. Latin pronouns may be divided into eight classes as follows.

- (a) Personal $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ego} = \text{I} \\ \text{tu} = \text{thou} \\ \text{is, ea, id} = \text{he, she, it.} \end{array} \right.$
- (b) Reflexive $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{se} \\ \text{sese} \end{array} \right. = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{himself, herself} \\ \text{itself, themselves} \end{array} \right.$

Note that Latin has no *separate* form for the reflexive pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons; the ordinary *personal* pronoun of the same person is used, which *may* be strengthened by 'ipse.'

e.g. *me* amo = I love *myself*
teipsum amas = thou lovest *thyself*.

- (c) Possessive $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{meus} = \text{my, mine} \\ \text{tuus} = \text{thy, thine} \\ \text{suus} = \text{his, her, its, their} \\ \text{noster} = \text{our, ours} \\ \text{vester} = \text{your, yours} \end{array} \right.$

In translating 'your' into Latin care should be taken to use *tuus*, if only *one* person is spoken to, *vester*, if *more than one*:

e.g. *Boy*, bring *your* books = *Libros tuos* affer, puer
Boys, bring *your* books = *Libros vestros* afferte, pueri.

- (d) Demonstrative $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hic} = \text{this} \\ \text{ille} \\ \text{iste} \end{array} \right\} = \text{that}$

In translating 'that' into Latin, use *ille* for anything good or famous, *iste* for anything bad or weak: *iste* also means 'that-of-yours:'

e.g. *Those* famous boys of Cornelia =
Praeclari illi Corneliae pueri.
Those wicked assassins =
Improbi isti sicarii.
That tongue *of yours* = *ista lingua.*

(*e*) Definitive { *idem* = the same.
 { *ipse* = — self.

Note that *ipse* = myself, thyself, himself, or itself according to the meaning of the word it goes with.

(*f*) Relative { *qui, quae, quod* =
 { who or which.

(*g*) Interrogative { *quis, quae, quid* =
 { who? or what?

(*h*) Indefinite { — *quis* — *quā* — *quid* =
 { any one, any,

used for *aliquis* after

<i>si</i> = if	<i>ubi</i> = where
<i>nisi</i> = unless	<i>unde</i> = whence
<i>num</i> = whether	<i>quo</i> = whither
<i>ne</i> = lest	

2. As *the same* English Pronoun stands sometimes for two *separate* Latin ones, pupils are apt to become confused as to *which* Latin one to use. The following explanations may therefore be found useful.

B.

Suus and (*ejus* = his)
 „ (*eorum* = their) .

1. When the word with which *his* or *their* goes belongs to the *subject* of the sentence, *his* or *their* must be translated by *suus*:

e.g. Peter loves *his* books = *Petrus libros suos amat.*

The Gauls laid waste *their fields* = Galli agros suos vastaverunt, because both books and fields belong to the *subject* of the sentence.

2. But when the word with which *his* or *their* goes does *not* belong to the subject of the sentence,

his must be translated by *ejus*,

their ,, ,, *eorum*.

e.g. Peter went to see John, and admired *his* books.

Petrus Johannem convenit, *ejusque* libros admiratus est.

Cæsar attacked the Gauls, and laid waste *their* fields.

Cæsar Gallos adortus est, et *eorum* agros vastavit,

because neither books nor fields belong to the *subject* of the sentence.

3. The absence of a *nominative* case to the reflexive pronoun 'se' shows how *sparingly* the nominative of 'suus' should be used: the young pupil should be warned of this, viz., that 'his,' when it goes with the *subject* of a sentence, should, *as a rule*, be translated by 'ejus,'

e.g. *His* axe fell into the water = *Ejus* securis in aquam cecidit.

4. 'Suus' should only be used in the *nominative* case when, by the sentence being inverted, it becomes *reflexive*:

e.g. *Sua* cuique est domus =

Suam quisque habet domum =

Each man has *his own* house.

Ut vitulum luget mater *suă* =

Ut vitulus lugetur a matre *suā* =

As the heifer is lamented by *its* mother.

5. Sometimes 'suus' is used after the verb, though *not* referring to the subject of the sentence; but only when the sense of the passage is obvious:

e.g. Scipio res *suas* Syracusanis restituit =

Scipio gave back *their* property to the Syracusans.

C.

SE AND IPSE (himself).

1. When the word 'himself' stands *alone* after the verb, and refers back to the *subject* of the sentence, it must be translated by *se*; as

The king saw *himself* in the looking-glass =

Rex *se* in speculo vidit;

N.B. Rex *ipsum* in speculo vidit would mean 'The king saw *the man himself* (or, *the very man*) in the looking-glass.'

2. But when the word 'himself' goes *with* a noun to emphasize it, it must be translated by *ipse*; as

I saw the king *himself* in the street =

Regem *ipsum* in plateâ vidi.

3. N.B. 'Se' is a strict reflexive pronoun; 'Ipse' is an emphatic adjectival pronoun; *i.e.* 'se' can only stand *alone after a verb* referring to the subject of the sentence, or in place of the subject of the sentence repeated; whereas 'ipse' is used *with* a noun (expressed or understood), like an adjective, to give to it fuller meaning.

4. So we see that in English the word 'himself' is both a reflexive and adjectival pronoun. Sometimes we use the word 'him' where more strictly we ought to say 'himself'; in such cases care must be taken to use 'se,'

The general carried his sword with *him* =

Dux *se-cum* gladium portavit;

not *cum eo*, which would mean with *somebody else*, and be nonsense.

D.

SE AND EUM (that he) IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Though the pupil may not yet have reached the construction known as 'Oratio Obliqua,' yet, as the use of *se* and *eum* in that construction comes under the head of what may be termed

'Pronoun difficulties,' the uses of them may as well be stated here.

2. When the 'he' refers to the subject of the *governing* verb, 'that he' must be translated by *se*; as

Cæsar says *that he* will come =

Cæsar dicit *se* venturum,

because the person who *will come* is *the same* as the person who *says*.

3. But when the 'he' does *not* refer to the subject of the governing verb, 'that he' must be translated by *eum*; as,

I know *that he* will come

Scio *eum* venturum

because the person who *will come* is *not* the same as the person who *knows*.

E.

QUI AND QUIS (who).

1. *Qui* is a *relative* pronoun, *i.e.* it relates to something *going* before, which is called the *antecedent* (for *special* rules, see *F*); as,

The man *who* did it = Is, qui fecit.

2. *Quis* is an *interrogative* pronoun, *i.e.* it asks a question; as,

Who did it? = *Quis* fecit?

3. N.B. *Qui*, *quæ*, *quod* = who, *which*.

Quis, *quæ*, *quid* = who? *what*?

But when the word 'what' is *adjectival*, *i.e.* goes with a noun, *qui* and *quod* should be used in preference to *quis* and *quid*; as,

What king has ever done so? = *Qui* rex unquam ita fecit?

What animal lives in these caves? =

Quod animal in his antris habitat?

But, *What* have you done? = *Quid* fecisti?

N.B. The accusative masculine singular of the above is

quem (*not* *quum*) — *quam* — *quod*,

and the neuter plural

qui — *quæ* — *quæ* (*not* *qua*).

F.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

As the various uses of the *Relative Pronoun* have often been found to present great difficulty to the learner, the following rules may perhaps be found to make them more easy.

1. The Relative must always be put in *the same number and gender* as the antecedent.

<i>e.g.</i> The wall which is here	=	mur ^{us} qui hic est
The city <i>which</i> is here	=	urb ^s quae hic est
The town <i>which</i> is here	=	oppidum quod hic est
The walls <i>which</i> are here	=	muri qui hic sunt
The cities <i>which</i> are here	=	urbes quae hic sunt
The towns <i>which</i> are here	=	oppida quae hic sunt.

2. When the Relative comes *immediately before* the verb in its clause, it must be put in the *nominative* case; and the verb to which it is nominative must be put in *the same number and person* as the antecedent.

<i>e.g.</i> I who love thee	=	ego, qui te amo
Thou who lovest me	=	tu, qui me amas
He who loves us	=	is, qui nos amat
We who love thee	=	nos, qui te amamus
Ye who love me	=	vos, qui me amatis
They who love us	=	ii, qui nos amant.

3. When any word—except an *adverb*—comes between the Relative and the verb in its clause, the Relative must be *whatever case the verb governs*.

e.g. The book *which* you sent = Liber, quem misisti,
because ‘to send’ governs *accusative*.

The boy *whom* you hurt = Puer, cui nocuisti,
because ‘to hurt’ governs the *dative*.

The life *which* we enjoy = Vita, quā fruimur,
because ‘to enjoy’ governs *ablative*.

4. N.B. In each of the above sentences the personal pronouns ‘you’ and ‘we’ come *in between* the relative and the verb. But

when the word coming in between them is *an adverb*, the relative remains *nominative*;

e.g. A thing which *rarely* happened = Res, *quae* raro contigit.

5. "In *case* the Relative belongs to its own clause."

This has been partly explained by the last rule. It must be also remembered that the Relative, though not governed by the verb in its clause, must be put in whatever case the Preposition before it requires, while still taking the gender and number of the antecedent.

e.g. The woman, *whose* husband was slain =
Femina, *cujus* maritus occisus est.

The Gauls, *whose* fields were laid waste =
Galli, *quorum* agri vastati sunt.

The boy, *to whom* you gave the book = Puer, *cui* librum dedisti.

The hope, *by which* we live = Spes, *quā* vivimus.

6. When the Relative Pronoun connects two substantives of different genders, it takes the gender of the one that comes *after* it, rather than of the one before it.

e.g. War *which* is the cause of such evil =
Bellum, *quae* causa est tanti mali.

The city *which* is head of the world =
Urbs, *quod* caput orbis est.

7. The Relative clause in Latin should, however small, always be marked off by commas; and the Relative should, *as a rule*, always be placed *immediately* after its antecedent.

8. In translating from Latin into English the Relative pronoun sometimes presents great difficulty. This arises from the fact that whereas in *English* the antecedent always comes *before* the Relative, in *Latin* it sometimes comes *after*, sometimes *in the same clause* as the Relative, and sometimes is *omitted* altogether.

9. The pupil therefore in dealing with the Relative should always look carefully for the antecedent. If he cannot find one, it is often part of the pronoun 'is, ea, id,' left out:

e.g. Quae dixisti, (ea) mihi placent =

What you have said pleases me.

'Ea' is the antecedent to quae, though it comes *after* it, and may be left out.

10. As the use of the *Personal* Pronoun (is, ea, id = he, she, it) follows closely on that of the Relative, it may not be considered out of place to give an instance or two of its use *here*:

'We will leave the city, you shall dwell *in it*' =

'Nos urbem relinquemus, vos *in eā* habitabitis.'

N.B.—*Eā* is feminine singular because it stands for urbs (city) which is the same, and it is ablative after 'in:'

'The number of stars is so great that you cannot count *them*' = 'Tantus est numerus stellarum, ut *eas* numerare non possis.'

N.B.—'*Eas*' is feminine plural because it stands for stellae (stars) which is the same, and it is accusative after 'numerare.'

G.

QUI WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. It may be as well in dealing with the Relative pronoun to notice the great Latin construction known as 'qui with subjunctive.'

2. The young pupil in translating from Latin into English should be carefully warned against rendering 'qui,' when it is followed by the subjunctive mood, by 'who,' except, of course, in the subordinate clauses of *Oratio Obliqua*.

3. Qui with the subjunctive signifies (1) a purpose, (2) a cause, and should be rendered by (1) in order to, (2) seeing that, according to the sense of the passage.

4. Misit legatos, *qui* pacem *peterent* = He sent ambassadors, (in order) to seek peace (purpose).

Non poterat, *qui* non auderet = He was not able, *seeing that* he did not dare (cause).

5. The two following rules may serve to mark the difference between the meaning of 'qui,' when used with the *Indicative* mood, and its meaning when used with the *Subjunctive*.

6. When the Relative qualifies the *subject* or *object* of the preceding clause, its verb must be put in the *Indicative* mood; as,

Serimus agros, qui fruges *ferunt* = We sow fields which bear crops:

Here 'qui' qualifies *agros*; *i.e.* We sow fields which are likely to produce something, not a barren plain.

Irascor tibi, qui hoc *fecisti* = I am angry with you, who have done this; but not necessarily *because* you have done this.

7. When the relative qualifies the *predicate* of the preceding clauses its verb should be *subjunctive*; as

Serimus agros, qui fruges *ferant* =

We sow fields *in order that* they may bear crops.

Here 'qui' qualifies the action of 'serimus,' and gives the *reason* of the sowing.

Irascor tibi, qui hoc *feceris* =

I am angry with you *for having done this*.

Here 'qui' qualifies the action of 'irascor,' and gives the *cause* of anger.

8. Among the uses of 'qui with subjunctive' may be noticed the following:

(a) He is worthy of being loved = Dignus est qui ametur.

(b) I am too great for fortune to be able to hurt me =

Major sum quam *cui possit* fortuna nocere.

9. The difference between *qui* with Indicative and Subjunctive may be gathered from the following expression of Plautus:

Da qui *coquit* = Give me a cook.

i.e. one whose *business* it is to cook.

Da qui *coquat* = Give me someone *to cook*,

but not necessarily a *professional cook*.

10. Before finally leaving 'qui with subjunctive,' we may as well notice the use of 'sunt qui.'

11. Here, as has been noticed on a previous occasion, the antecedent to 'qui' is omitted, it being probably 'ii' understood.

12. The usual translation, however, of 'sunt qui' is
 There are *some* who,
 and the verb after it is put in the *subjunctive* mood,
e.g. There are some who think = Sunt qui putent.

H.

CORRELATIVES.

1. As we have been dealing with pronouns, and have treated of the Relative at great length, it may be as well here also to mention those words which are known as *correlatives*, and generally present some difficulty to the learner.

2. We will, therefore, give two tables of the correlatives, and their antecedent words; the first showing their meanings when used *alone*, the second their meanings when used in *correlation*.

N.B.—The words beginning with 'qu' are the correlatives; but when they are used *alone*, they are interrogatives.

3.

Alone.

Qualis?	= of what sort?	Talis	= such
Quantus?	= how great?	Tantus	= so great
Quot?	= how many?	Tot	= so many
Quoties?	= how often?	Toties	= so often
Quam?	= how?	Tam	= so

In correlation.

Talis	— qualis	= such	— as
Tantus	— quantus	= as great	— as
Tot	— quot	= as many	— as
Toties	— quoties	= as often	— as
Tam	— quam	= as	— as

e.g. he is *as* good *as* he is brave = *tam* bonus *quam* fortis est.

Note also Idem — qui = the same — as.

4. The pupil must be careful in dealing with *correlatives*, to follow the same rule as in dealing with *relatives*; 'i.e. "the correlative takes the gender and number of its antecedent, but in case belongs to its own clause."

- (a) The city is such *as* it has ever been =
Talis est urbs, *qualis* semper fuit.
- (b) The city is such *as* I have ever known it =
Talis est urbs, *qualem* semper cognovi.
- (c) The fire is as great *as* it has ever been =
Tantus est ignis, *quantus* unquam fuit.
- (d) The fire is as great *as* I have ever seen =
Tantus est ignis, *quantum* unquam vidi.

In (b) and (d) *qualem* and *quantum* are accusative because governed by the verbs after.

5. We may here make the same remark in reference to the translation of a correlative from Latin into English, viz., that the antecedent is often omitted. For instance, in the following well-known passage from Virgil :

Qualis apes aestate novā per florea rura Exercet labor = Like the labour which exercises the bees in early summer over the flowery meads :

'Qualis' must have its antecedent 'talis' somewhere or other, expressed or understood. So the passage in full would seem to run :

Talis labor exercet Tyrios qualis exercet apes =
Such labour exercises the Tyrians as exercises the bees.

6. Under this head we may notice the following expressions, in which the above words, or words like them, are employed.

Cæsar raised *as great* forces *as possible* =
Cæsar *quam maximas* copias comparavit.

The full form of the above expression seems to be :

Caesar tam magnas quam maximae esse possunt copias comparavit =

Lit. Caesar raised forces as great as the greatest are able to be.

N.B. 'Quam' with superlative = as — as possible.

e.g. celerrime = most or very quickly.

quam celerrime = as quickly as possible,

The more they have, the more they want =

Quo { plus habent, ^{eo} } plus cupiunt.
Quanto { ^{tanto} }

Lit. *by what* (or, *how much*) more they have =

by that (or, *so much*) more they want.

7. In connection with the word 'such' note the following ways of translating it:

(a) 'Such' before another adjective should be rendered by *tam* = so.

e.g. We have not *such* savage hearts =

Non tam ferocia corda gestamus.

(b) 'Such,' in relation to *size*, should always be rendered by *tantus*.

e.g. I never saw *such* waves =

Tantos fluctus nunquam vidi.

(c) 'Such' may often be rendered by 'is, ea, id':

e.g. They used *such* swiftmess, that they arrived in two days =

Eâ celeritate usi sunt ut biduo pervenirent.

Note also In *eo* est ut = he is in *such a state* that.

I.

OTHER PRONOMINALS.

1.	Unus	= one	} Declined like 'bonus' except Gen. sing. = -ius Dat. „ = -i.
	Solus	= alone	
	Totus	= whole	
	Ullus	= any	
	Nullus	= none	
	Alius	= <i>another</i>	
	Uter	= which of two	} Like 'niger' (except as above)
	Neuter	= neither	
	Alter	= <i>the other</i> — like 'tener' (except as above).	

2. Aliquis = some one (positive)
 Quisquam = any one (negative)
 Quisnam? = who, pray?
 Quisquis = whoever
 Quisque = each
 Quidam = a certain one
 Quivis = any one you wish

f.

REMARKS ON THE FOREGOING.

1. *Unus* = one, has a plural number, which is used with Latin nouns that are plural in *form*, and singular in *meaning*;

as Una castra = one camp

Unae litterae = one letter.

Alius means one—another (of many)

Alter „ the one—the other (of two),

as *Alius aliud dicit* =

one man says one thing, another another.

Alter terrâ, alter mari profectus est =

The one set out by sea, the other by land.

2. *Aliquis* = some one, is always used in a *positive* sentence, but is very often found in its shortened form ‘quis,’ after the particles enumerated in Cap. IV. *A.* 1, h,

as *Si quis dicere vellet* =

If any man should wish to speak.

3. *Quisquam* = any one, is always used with a *negative*, or an *implied* negative;

as *Haud quenquam hoc fecisse puto* =

I do not think that anyone has done so.

An quisquam hoc fecit? =

Has any one done so? (Surely not).

4. *Quisque* = each, is often used in the singular and plural with a superlative in the sense of 'all' ;

as *Optimus quisque* (or, *optimi quique*) *vitium odit* =
All the best men hate vice.

Be careful not to confuse

Quidam = a certain one with

Quidem = indeed.

5. Note the following elegant uses of 'idem.'

He was a fool, *and* a liar *too* ;

Stultus erat, idemque mendax.

He pursues things which are not only useless, but *absolutely* hurtful ;

Inutilia sequitur, eădemque perniciosă.

6. 'Ipse' may sometimes be rendered 'very,'

e.g. ipsi lapides = the *very* stones.

CHAPTER V.

VERBS.

A.

ACTIVE VOICE.

1. The four conjugations are the four classes into which Latin Verbs are divided, each distinguished by the characteristic vowel in the ending of the Present Infinitive.

2.	Conjugation I.	Pres. Inf. —	<i>Are</i>
	„ II.	„ —	<i>Ēre</i>
	„ III.	„ —	<i>Ĕre</i>
	„ IV.	„ —	<i>Ire.</i>

3. A Latin Verb consists of *three* stems, the *present*, *perfect*, and *supine*; and from these stems the whole of the rest of the verb is formed. Hence the present infinitive, perfect indicative, and supine are called the *Principal parts* of a Latin Verb.

4. The *present* stem is found by cutting off the last *three* letters of the present Infinitive, and on to this stem the tense-endings in the table in (10) are affixed.

5. The *perfect* stem is found by cutting off the final -i of the perfect indicative (have), and from this stem the five following tenses are formed.

Pluperfect Indicative	by adding	— eram (had)
Future Perfect	„ „	— ero (shall have)
Perfect Subjunctive	„	— erim (may have)
Pluperfect	„ „	— issem (might have)
Perfect Infinitive	„	— isse (to have).

e.g. Fero = I carry; perfect tuli = I have carried; stem tul —; therefore

tul -eram	= I had carried
tul -ero	= I shall have carried
tul -erim	= I may have carried
tul -issem	= I might have carried
tul -isse	= to have carried.

N.B. The above system may be applied to *every* verb in the Latin language, of the *active* voice.

6. The *supine* stem is found by cutting off the -um of the supine, and the two following participles are formed from it:

Future active by adding -urus (about to)	
Perfect passive	„ -us (past part. in n. d. t.).

e.g. Fero, supine latum. stem lat —

lat -urus	= about to carry
lat -us	= carried.

N.B. The above system may be applied to every *active* verb in the Latin language, except the following:

seco = to cut; supine sect—um; but secaturus = about to cut.

juvo = to help; supine jut—um; but jvaturus = about to help.

7. The *present imperative* may always be found by cutting off the last *two* letters of the present infinitive.

e.g. ama -re = to love; ama = love thou.

But	dicere = to say;	Imp. dic.
	ducere = to lead;	„ duc.
	facere = to do;	„ fac.

Note also ferre = to carry; „ fer.

8. The *Imperfect subjunctive* may always be found by adding *m* to the present infinitive; as

amare = to love.

Imperf. subj. : amarem = I might love.

But fieri = to become, makes fierem.

9. The endings of the persons of the tenses of a Latin Verb in the active voice form the word

M O S T,

except the *perfect indicative*.

1st persons singular end in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} M \\ \text{or} \\ O \end{array} \right.$

2nd persons $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{singular} \\ \text{and} \\ \text{plural} \end{array} \right\}$ end in S.

3rd persons $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{singular} \\ \text{and} \\ \text{plural} \end{array} \right\}$ end in T.

1st persons plural always end in -mus.

Table of Present-stem Tense-endings.	I. -Are	II. -Ēre	III. -Ēre	IV. -Ire	Signs, or meanings of Tenses.
Present Ind.	-o	-eo	-o	-io	Am, is, art, are; do, does, dost; or plain verb
Imperfect Ind.	-abam	-ebam	-ebam	-iebam	Was, wast, were
Future Ind.	-abo	-ebo	-am	-iam	Will, wilt, shall
Present Subj.	-em	-eam	-am	-iam	May, mayst
Imperfect Subj.	-arem	-ĕrem	-ĕrem	-irem	Might, would, should
Present Imperative	-a	-ĕ	-ĕ	-i	= command
Present Participle	-ans	-ens	-ens	-iens	-ing (person)
Gerund	-andi	-endi	-endi	-iendi	-ing (action)

N.B. *Future simples* end in -unt (3rd pers. plur.)

Future perfects }
Perfect subjunctives } end in -int (3rd pers. plur.)

B.

PASSIVE VOICE.

1. The *present-stem* tenses in the passive voice correspond to the same tenses in the active voice, with the following change of endings in the persons, singular and plural :

Sing.	}	1st person -m (or o) becomes -r				The final letters of 2nd sing. 2nd pl. and the other persons form the word 'sir.'
		2nd	„	-s	„ -ris	
		3rd	„	-t	„ -tur	
Plural.	}	1st	„	-mus	„ -mur	
		2nd	„	-tis	„ -mini	
		3rd	„	-nt	„ -ntur	

2. The *perfect-stem* tenses are formed by a union of the perfect participle of the verb, with the different tenses of the verb 'sum,' as follows:

	<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>
Pf. ind.	amavi	becomes	amatus sum.
Plupf. ind.	amaveram	„	amatus eram.
Fut. pf.	amavero	„	amatus ero.
Pf. subj.	amaverim	„	amatus sim.
Plupf. subj.	amavissem	„	amatus essem.
Pf. inf.	amavisse	„	amatus esse.

N.B. In translating into Latin, the *participle* of a compound tense of the passive voice should be made to agree with the subject in gender and number.

<i>e.g.</i> The <i>wall</i> was taken	=	mur ^{us} capt ^{us} est
The <i>city</i> was taken	=	urb ^s capt ^a est
The <i>town</i> was taken	=	oppid ^{um} capt ^{um} est
The <i>walls</i> were taken	=	muri capt ⁱ sunt
The <i>cities</i> were taken	=	urbes capt ^{ae} sunt
The <i>towns</i> were taken	=	oppida capt ^a sunt.

3. The *present Imperative* of a passive verb is the same as the present infinitive active.

<i>e.g.</i> amare	=	to love (active)
amare	=	be thou loved (passive).

4. The *present Infinitive* of a *passive* verb is the same as the present Infinitive *active* with the final *e* changed into *i*; except in conjugation 3, when the *er* is dropped.

e.g. amare becomes amari
 monēre „ monēri
 regēre „ regi (for regēri)
 audire „ audiri.

5. The *future Infinitive passive* is the active supine with *iri*, and will be explained later on.

6. The gerund *-ndi* in the *active* voice is the gerundive *-ndus* in the *passive* voice.

7. There being no *middle* voice in Latin, as there is in Greek, *i.e.* with a special *form* of its own, we may here note a peculiar meaning some verbs have in the passive voice.

8. When the same verb in English may be used in both a *transitive* and *intransitive* sense, the former should be rendered by the *active*, the latter by the *passive* voice of the verb.

e.g. He rolls the ball = Pilam *volvit*;
 but The ball rolls = Pila *volvitur*.
 He moves the table = Mensam *movet*;
 but The table moves = Mensa *movetur*.

9. Here also may be noticed certain English verbs which have both a *transitive* and *intransitive* meaning, but a different verb for each in Latin.

e.g. I burn (intr.) = ardeo
 „ (trans.) = cremo
 „ = incendo
 „ = uro

The letter burns = Epistola *ardet*;
 but, I burn the letter = Epistolam *incendo*.

I increase (intr.) = cresco.
 „ (trans.) = augeo.

The love of money increases = *Crescit* amor nummi;
 but He increases the number of soldiers =
 Militum numerum *auget*.

Active and Passive.

10. As young pupils so often translate a Passive by an active, we may here give a plain rule for distinguishing between the two.

(a) When any part of the verb 'to be' is followed by a participle in '-ing,' the verb is active.

e.g. Caesar *was taking* the city = Caesar urbem *capiebat* (active).

(b) But when any part of the verb 'to be' is followed by a participle in -n, -d, or -t, the verb is passive.

e.g. The city *was taken* by Caesar =
Urbs a Caesare capta est (passive).

So—The slaves *were sold*
The house *was bought* } passive.

C.

DEPONENT VERBS, ETC.

1. These verbs are *passive* in form and *active* in meaning. They are probably so called from deponere = to lay aside, because they *lay aside* the passive meaning, and take an active one instead.

e.g. utor = I *use* (not *am used*).

2. A *deponent* verb is particularly rich in participles, and has those of the *active* as well as *passive*, all (except gerundive) with *active* meaning.

e.g. utens = using
usurus = about to use
usus = having used
supines, usum = to use
,, usu = to be used
gerund, utendi = of using
gerundive, utendus = to be used.

Note that the *future infinitive* of a deponent verb is *active* in form, not *passive*;

e.g. To be about to use = usurus esse, *not* usum iri.

3. The *present Imperative* of a deponent verb is the same as the present Infinitive active *would be*, if there were one.

e.g. utor; Imp. utēre = use thou.

4. The opposite of a deponent verb is a *quasi-passive* verb, which is *active* in *form* and *passive* in *meaning*. The following are the best known :

exulo = I am banished	vapulo = I am beaten
fio = I am made	veneo = I am for sale.
liceo = I am bid for	

5. *Semi-deponent* verbs are those whose *perfect-stem* tenses only are passive in form and active in meaning ; they are as follows :

audeo	— ausus sum	= dare
gaudeo	— gavisus sum	= rejoice
soleo	— solitus sum	= am wont
fido	— fisis sum	= trust.

6. *Frequentative* verbs express *frequency* or *intensity* of action ; they are formed from the supine of a verb, and belong to conjugation I.

e.g. Salio = to leap — (sup.) saltum ; saltare = to dance.

7. *Inceptive* verbs express *beginning* of action ; they are formed from nouns, adjectives, and verbs ; end in -sco, and are of conjugation III.

e.g. Puer	= a boy	— puerasco	= I become a boy
Mitis	= mild	— mitesco	= I grow mild
Pallere	= to be pale	— pallésco	= I turn pale.

8. *Desiderative* verbs express *desire* of action. They are formed by adding -urio to supine-stem, and are of conjugation IV.

e.g. edo = I eat — (sup.) esum ; esurio = I am hungry.

D.

IO VERBS.

1. These are verbs which, though really belonging to conjugation III., insert an *i* after the present-stem ; but not before another *i*, final *e*, or short *er*.

2. The pupil should be carefully warned against the omission of the *i* in such cases as the following parts of the verb

Facio — facere = to do.

They do	= faciunt,	not facunt
They did	= faciebant,	„ facebant
They will do	= facient,	„ facent
They may do	= faciant,	„ facant
(A person) doing	= faciens,	„ facens
Of doing	= faciendi,	„ facendi.

For list of -io verbs see Appendix H.

E.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. There are *seven* irregular verbs in Latin, all of which are *something like* 'sum,' or one of the four conjugations, but differ from them in one or two slight respects.

2. *Possum* = *I am able*.

This is a compound of the old indeclinable adjective *potis* = able, and the verb, 'sum' = I am; and if this is carefully borne in mind by the pupil when learning the verb, he will be saved some very bad mistakes which are sometimes made. We will proceed to notice a few of these; and we will first write out the present tense in full, showing how it is formed.

potis — sum = possum	potis — sumus = possumus
potis — es = potes	potis — estis = potestis
potis — est = potest	potis — sunt = possunt.

The *imperfect*, therefore, is

potis — eram = poteram (*not* potebam).

The *future simple* is

potis — ero = potero (*not* potebo or potam).

The *imperfect subjunctive* is

potis — essem = possem (*not* poterem).

The *perfect indicative* is

potis — fui = potui;

and in this verb, and five of the other six, the *perfect-stem* tenses are formed according to the rule in Cap. V A (5).

3. *Volo* = I wish (or, am willing)

Nolo = I am unwilling (non — volo)

Malo = I prefer (magis — volo = I wish more).

These are *more like* conjugation *three*: the chief irregularities however, are the

Present Infinitive.

Velle — Nolle — Malle.

Present Indicative.

Volo — Nolo — Malo

Vis — Nonvis — Mavis

Vult — Nonvult — Mavult

Volumus — Nolumus — Malumus

Vultis — Nonvultis — Mavultis

Volunt — Nolunt — Malunt.

Present Subjunctive.

Velim, &c. — Nolim, &c. — Malim, &c.

Imperfect Subjunctive.

Vellem, &c. — Nollem, &c. — Mallem, &c.

N.B. Pres. subj. has *one* l, followed by *-im*

Imperf. „ has *two* l's, followed by *-em*.

Nolo is the only one of the above verbs that has a *Present Imperative*, which is as follows:—

Noli — ite — ito — itote — unto.

It is used with the present Infinitive of a verb, instead of *ne* with the Perfect Subjunctive.

e.g. Do not touch me = Be unwilling to touch me =

Noli me tangere (for, ne me tetigeris).

4. *Fero*, I carry, is also like conjugation *three*, and the figure of speech employed in it is 'syncopē,' from the Greek 'sun' = together, and 'kopē' = a cutting; *i.e.* a *cutting out* of a vowel, and a drawing *together* of the consonants. It is found in the following tenses:

Present Indicative (active).

Fero

Ferimus

Fers (for feris)

Fertis (for feritis)

Fert (for ferit)

Ferunt

(passive).

Feror	Ferimur
Ferris (for fereris)	Ferimini
Fertur (for feritur)	Feruntur.

Present Imperative (active).

Fer (for fere)	Ferto (for ferito)
Ferte (for ferite)	Fertote (for feritote)
Ferto (for ferito)	Ferunto.

(passive).

Ferre (for ferere)	Fertor (for feritor)
Ferimini	Feruntor.
Fertor (for feritor)	

Imperfect Subjunctive.

(active) Ferrem (for fererem)
(passive) Ferrer (for fererer).

Present Infinitive.

(active) Ferre (for ferere).
(passive) Ferri.

In all other respects fero is regular, and conjugated like 'rego'; and all the compounds of fero are conjugated in the same manner as fero.

5. *Eo* = *I go*.

This verb is more like the *fourth* conjugation, but has several striking irregularities.

Present Indicative.

Eo — is — it — imus — itis — eunt.

Imperfect Indicative.

Ibam — as — at — amus — atis — ant.

Future Indicative.

Ibo — is — it — imus — itis — unt.

Present Subjunctive.

Eam — eas — eat — eamus — eatis — eant.

Present Imperative.

I — ite — ito — ito — itote — eunto.

*Gerunds.**Pres. part.*

eundi — do — dum

iens — euntis.

The *perfect* is *ivi* or *ii*, which can be further contracted: *e.g.* *isti* for *iisti*, *isse* for *iisse*: but in the compounds the 'v' is generally dropped. *Queo* (I am able) and *nequeo* (unable) are compounds of 'eo.'

The pupil should be carefully warned that the *compounds* of 'eo' (except *ambio* = I go round) are *not* of the fourth conjugation, but are conjugated in all tenses like 'eo.' We will point out a few of the mistakes into which pupils often fall.

Redire = to return.

Imperfect, *redibam* (not *rediebam*)

Future, *redibo* (not *rediam*)

Pres. subj., *redeam* (not *rediam*)

Pres. part, *rediens-euntis* (not *-ientis*)

Gerunds, *redeundi*, &c. (not *rediendi*),

and so with the *other* compounds.

9. *Fio*. I am made, is more like conjugation *four* than 'eo,' except the Imperfect Subjunctive, which is *fierem*. Its *present-stem* tenses are used as the passive of the present-stem tenses of 'facio,' which has none in the passive voice, except the ger. 'faciendus.'

e.g. I am made = *fio* (not *facior*)

I was being made = *fiebam* (not *faciebar*)

I shall be made = *fiam* (not *faciar*)

I may be made = *fiam* (not *faciar*)

I might be made = *fierem* (not *facerer*).

The *perfect-stem* tenses of *fio* are the perfect participle passive of 'facio' (*factus*) with the tenses of 'sum.'

N.B. *Compounds* of 'facio' have *full* passive.

7. The verb *edo* = I eat contracts some of its persons, as follows:

Edere becomes *esse*

Edite becomes *este*

Edis „ *es*

Ederem „ *essem*.

Edit „ *est*

These are, therefore, apt to be confounded with the same parts of the verb 'sum'; but the presence of an *accusative* in the sentence should show that

'est' = *eats* — not *is*.

e.g. *Est mollis flamma medullas* =

The tender passion *eats* into her marrow.

Est stuppea flamma carinas =

The flame from the tow *eats* into the barks.

In the *present subjunctive*, *edim* — *is* — *it* is preferred to *edam* — *as* — *at*.

F.

IMPERSONAL VERBS AND VERBS USED IMPERSONALLY.

1. An *Impersonal* Verb is one which has no *personal* subject. e.g. *It* rains; 'it' is not a *personal* subject. The old name for them was 'uni-personal,' i.e. with only *one* person, which is the *third person singular*.

2. There are several verbs which are *Impersonal* both in Latin and in English; these, therefore, present no difficulty, but it may be as well to mention a few:

Fulgurat	= it lightens	Ningit	= it snows
Tonat	= it thunders	Lucescit	= it dawns
Pluit	= it rains	Vesperascit	= it grows late.

3. There are other verbs, however, which are *personal* in *English*, but *impersonal* in *Latin*.

e.g. There are no such expressions in Latin as

I repent I am ashamed *I am vexed I am wearied I am allowed
--

* See, however, Cap. XVII. C (d).

4. The following table will show their use :

<i>Latin.</i>		<i>English.</i>
Pœnitet	} me = I am	{ repentant
Pudet		
Piget	} te = thou art	{ ashamed
Taedet		
Miseret	} eum = he is	{ vexed
Oportet		
Licet	} nos = we are	{ weary
Libet		
	} vos = you are	{ pitiful
	} eos = they are	{ bound
	} mihi = I am	{ allowed
		{ pleased.

5. *N.B.* All the verbs in the above table are of the *second* conjugation. The verb always remains *third person singular*, though the verbs have *all their moods and tenses*. The English *subject* becomes *accusative* in Latin, and there is often added a *genitive* of the thing.

e.g. I repent of my folly =
 It repents *me* of my folly =
 Pœnitet *me* stultitiæ.

These boys will never be weary of play =
 It will never weary *these boys* of play =
 Taedebit nunquam *hos pueros* ludi.

6. Licet = it is allowed, and oportet = it behoves, are followed by an infinitive mood ; and licet takes a *dative*, oportet an *accusative* of the pronoun.

e.g. I may go = licet mihi ire
 I ought to go = oportet me ire.

Should there be a *past* tense in the sentence, it should be put with the *impersonal*, not the infinitive, which remains *present*.

I ought to have gone = oportuit me ire ;
e.g. I might have gone = licuit mihi ire
 not—licet or oportet *ivisse*.

Note also—I can do it = facere possum
 I could have done it = facere potui.

7. Certain other verbs either *may* or *must* be used *impersonally* in Latin; these are

(a) Intransitive (which *may*):

(b) Verbs governing Dative (which *must*).

We will now proceed to show *how*.

8. *Intransitive* verbs may be used *impersonally* in the passive, *i.e.* in the third person singular. Being intransitive, they govern no object, consequently have no passive voice, as properly understood, *i.e.* no passive voice with a personal subject. The following instances will explain:

Consurgitur (for consurgunt) e concilio =

It is risen, *i.e.* they rise from the council

Ventum erat (for veneramus) ad Vestae =

It had been come, *i.e.* we had come to Vesta's temple (understood).

9. Verbs which govern the *Dative* in the active voice can only be used in the *third person singular* in the *passive* voice. This is a most important rule; and as there is only a limited number of verbs which govern the Dative, we do not so often meet with instances of it in translation. It is, therefore, apt to slip out of the pupil's mind, and should be all the more carefully impressed upon it; viz., that those verbs which govern the *Dative* in the active voice have only a *third person singular* in the passive, and that without a *personal* subject; the subject of the English *passive* verb remains *Dative*. We will proceed to give the conjugation of such a verb.

10. Passive voice of *Parco* = I spare.

Parcitur mihi = I am spared (not parcor)

Parcitur tibi = Thou art spared (not parceris)

Parcitur illi = He is spared (not ille)

Parcitur nobis = We are spared (not parcimur)

Parcitur vobis = You are spared (not parcimini)

Parcitur illis = They are spared (not parcuntur).

Parcebatur mihi, &c. = I was being spared

Parcetur mihi, &c. = I shall be spared

Parcatur mihi, &c. = Let me be spared

Parceretur mihi, &c. = I should be spared.

The use of the *gerundive* of these verbs will be explained later on. For a list of verbs that govern the *dative* see Appendix I.

11. The rule is the same when verbs which govern the *dative* are used in the present infinitive passive in dependence on some other verb, such as

possum = I am able

soleo = I am wont.

For example :

(a) The enemy can be resisted.

not, *Hostes* resisti *possunt*

but, *Hostibus* resisti *potest*.

(b) The faults of youth are wont to be indulged.

Not, *Vitia* juventutis indulgeri *solent*,

but, *Vitiis* juventutis indulgeri *solet* :

because 'resisto' and 'indulgeo' both govern a dative.

So in Oratio Obliqua :

I know that the enemy can be resisted =

Scio *hostibus* resisti posse : not *hostes*.

INTEREST AND RĒFERT.

1. We may here notice the above two impersonal verbs :

interest = it is to the interest of

rĕfert = it concerns.

They are used with the *singular feminine* of the possessive pronouns in the first and second persons singular and plural : interest, but *not* rĕfert, with the *genitive* case in the third person singular and plural.

e.g. mea interest = it is to my interest (meam inter rem est).

tua rĕfert = it concerns you (tuam rem fert).

2. *His and their* should be rendered by *ejus and eorum*, except in Oratio Obliqua when they refer to the principal subject, when 'suus' should be used.

e.g. Interest *ejus* = it is to his interest; but
Negat *sua* interesse = he says that it is not to *his* interest: lit.
he *denies* that it is.

G.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. *Defective* Verbs in Latin may be divided into *two* classes:

(1) those which have only *perfect-stem* tenses, and these are used with *present* meaning.

(2) those which have not got all their persons and numbers.

2. Coepi = I begin
 Memini = I remember
 Odi = I hate

are those belonging to Class I, and are conjugated as follows:

Coep	—	eram = I	{	began
Memin	—			remembered
Od	—			hated
Coep	—	ero = I shall	{	begin
Memin	—			remember
Od	—			hate
Coep	—	erim = I may	{	begin
Memin	—			remember
Od	—			hate
Coep	—	issem = I might	{	begin
Memin	—			remember
Od	—			hate
Coep	—	isse = To	{	begin
Memin	—			remember
Od	—			hate

3. *Novi*, the perfect of *nosco*, is also used in the same way ; and we have

noveram	contracted	into	nôram,
novissem	„	„	nôssem,
novisse	„	„	nôsse.

4. *Coepi* has a future participle *coepturus*, about to begin, and a perfect participle *coeptus*, which, however, can only be used with a *passive* infinitive.

e.g. Cæsar begins to besiege the city =

Cæsar urbem oppugnare coepit ;

but The city is begun to be besieged =

Urbs oppugnari *coepta est*.

5. *Memini* has imperative *Memento*, plural *mementote*.

6. *Odi* has future participle *osurus*, about to hate ; and sometimes *osus sum*, from which also we get the two compounds *exosus*, and *perosus* = hating.

7. Aio = I say, Inquam = I say,

Fari = to speak

are the best known of Class II. Of these we propose to give the parts most in use.

Ait = 'he says' may be used with either direct or indirect narration.

Inquit = 'he says' can only be used with *direct* narration and should be placed after the first or second word of a person's speech ; like our 'says he.'

Fatur = he speaks	} common in Virgil.
Fabor = I will speak	
Fatus = having spoken	
Fandi = of speaking	

8. In addition to the above, we have the following forms used with special meaning :

Quaeso (an old form of *quaero*) corresponds to our now obsolete expression of 'pry'thee' ; it has first person plural *quaesumus*.

Ave and salve = hail.

Vale—etc. = farewell (though *valeo* is fully conjugated).

Age—ite = come now! (ago has full form). Hoc age = attend to the matter in hand.

cēdo—cedite (cette), an old imperative = give here! tell us!

apage = begone!

H.

SYMPHONIOUS VERBS.

The following is a table of verbs which, from their similarity in sound, frequently give rise to mistakes:

accendo — ěre — di — sum	= kindle
ascendo — ěre — di — sum	= ascend
āro — are — avi — atum	= plough
āreo — ěre — ui	= be dry
audeo — ěre — ausus sum	= dare
audio — ěre — īvi — ĩtum	= hear
cādo — ěre — cecīdi — casum	= fall
caedo — ěre — cecīdi — caesum	= cut, beat
cēdo — ěre — cessi — cessum	= yield
sēdeo — ěre — sēdi — sessum	= sit
sēdo — are — avi — atum	= allay
cāleo — ěre — ui	= be warm
calleo — ěre — ui	= be wise
cāneo — ěre — ui	= be white
cāno — ěre — cecīni — cantum	= sing
cāpio — ěre — cēpi — captum	= take
cūpio — ěre — īvi — ĩtum	= desire
compello — are — avi — atum	= address
compello — ěre — compūli — compulsum	= compel
condo — ěre — dīdi — dītum	= found, hide
condio — ire — īvi — dītum	= pickle, preserve
cūro — are — avi — atum	= take care
curro — ěre — cucurri — cursum	= run

dīco — are — avi — atum	= dedicate
dīco — ěre — dixi — dictum	= say
duco — ěre — duxi — ductum	= lead
disco — ěre — dīdīci	= learn
doceo — ěre — docui — doctum	= teach
ēdo — ěre — ēdi — esum	= eat
ēdo — ěre — dīdi — dītum	= utter
fāveo — ěre — fāvi — fautum	= favour (dat.)
fōveo — ěre — fōvi — fōtum	= cherish
fendo — ěre — di — sum	= strike
fundo — ěre — fūdi — fūsum	= pour
fĕro — ferre — tūli — lātum	= carry
fĕrio — ire (none)	= strike
fīgo — ěre — fixi — fixum	= fix
fingo — ěre — finxi — fictum	= fashion
frango — ěre — frēgi — fractum	= break
fungor — i — functus sum (abl.)	= discharge
fūgo — are — avi — atum	= put to flight
fūgio — ěre — fūgi — fugitum	= flee
fulgeo — ěre — fulsi	= shine
fulcio — ire — fūlsi — fultum	= prop up
hābeo — ěre — ui — ĭtum	= have
hĕbeo — ěre — ui	= be dull
hābīto — are — avi — atum	= dwell
haereo — ěre — haesi	= cling
haurio — ire — hausi — haustum	= drain
ignoro — are — avi — atum	= be ignorant
ignosco — ěre — ovi — otum	= pardon (dat.)
impero — are — avi — atum	= command (dat.)
impetro — are — avi — atum	= obtain (by asking)

jáceo — ěre — ui	= lie down
jácio — ěre — jěci — jactum	= throw
laudo — are — avi — atum	= praise
laedo — ěre — laesi — laesum	= hurt
lúdo — ěre — lusi — lusum	= play
licet — ěre — licuit	= be allowed
liceo — ěre — licui	= be bid for
lúceo — ěre — luxi	= shine
lúgeo — ěre — luxi	= mourn
māno — are — avi — atum	= flow
māneo — ěre — mansi — mansum	= remain
mĕto — ěre — messui — messum	= mow
mĕtuo — ěre — metui	= fear
mĕtior — iri — mensus sum	= measure
mentior — iri — mentitus sum	= tell lies
mollio — ire — ivi — itum	= soften
mōlior — iri — itus sum	= contrive
mōror — ari — atus sum	= delay
mōror — ari — atus sum	= play the fool
mōrior — i — mortuus sum	= die
mulceo — ěre — mulsi — mulsum	= soothe
mulgeo — ěre — mulsi — mulsum	= milk
nascor — i — natus sum	= be born
nanciscor — i — nactus or nactus sum	= obtain
nĭteo — ěre — ui	= shine
nĭtor — i — { nisus } sum	= strive
	{ nixus }
no — nare — navi — natum	= swim
neo — nĕre — nevi — netum	= spin
nuo — nuĕre — nui	= nod
oblĭno — ěre — oblĕvi — oblĭtum	= smear
obliviscor — i — oblĭtus sum	= forget

occido — ěre — ĭdi — ĭsum	= set
occido — ěre — ĭdi — ĭsum	= slay
ōpĕrio — ire — erui — ertum	= cover
āpĕrio — ire — erui — ertum	= open
opperior — iri — ertus sum	= wait for
ōrior — iri — ortus sum	= rise
ordior — iri — orsus sum	= begin
pango — ěre — pĕpĭgi — pactum	= fix
pingo — ěre — pinxi — pictum	= paint
pungo — ěre — pŭpŭgi — punctum	= prick
pāro — are — avi — atum	= prepare
pāreo — ěre — ui (dat.)	= obey
pārio — ěre — pĕpĕri — partum	= beget
parco — ěre — pĕperci — parsum	= spare (dat.)
pātor — i — passus sum	= suffer
pāteo — ěre — ui	= lie open
lāteo — ěre — ui	= lie hid
plāco (acc.) — are — avi — atum	= appease
plāceo (dat.) — ěre — ui — ĭtum	= please
pendo — ěre — pĕpendi — pensum	= hang up (tr.)
pendeo — ěre — pĕpendi	= hang down (intr.)
prōficio — ěre — fĕci — fectum	= progress
prōficiscor — i — profectus sum	= set out
prōfecto (adverb)	= surely
quaero — ěre — quaesīvi — quaesitum	= seek
quĕror — i — questus sum	= complain
rādo — ěre — rasi — rasum	= scrape
rōdo — ěre — rosi — rosum	= gnaw
rĕdeo — ire — ĭi — ĭtum	= come back
reddo — ěre — dīdi — dītum	= give back

sěro — ěre — sěvi — sǎtum	= sow (corn)
sěro — ěre — serui — sertum	= sew (cloth)
servo (acc.) — are — avi — atum	= preserve
servio (dat.) — ire — ii — ĭtum	= serve
tango — ěre — tětīgi — tactum	= touch
tinguo — ěre — tinxi — tinctum	= dip
tendo — ěre — tětendi — tensum	= stretch
tondeo — ěre — tōtondi — tonsum	= shear
tundo — ěre — tūtūdi — tunsum	= thump
terreo — ěre — ui — ĭtum	= frighten
těro — ěre — trīvi — trītum	= rub
tīmeo — ěre — ui	= fear
tūmeo — ěre — ui	= swell
trādo — ěre — dīdi — dītum	= hand over
trūdo — ěre — trusi — trusum	= push
vāgio — ire — ii — ĭtum	= whine
vāgor — ari — vagatus sum	= wander
vēneo — ire — ii — ĭtum	= be for sale
vēnio — ire — vēni — ventum	= come
vīdeo — ěre — vīdi — visum	= see
vīso — ěre — visi — visum	= visit
vinco — ěre — vici — victum	= conquer
vincio — ire — vinxi — vinctum	= bind
vīvo — ěre — vixi — victum	= live
vello — ěre — vulsi — vulsum	= rend
vōlo — velle — vōlui	= wish
vōlo — are — avi — atum	= fly.

CHAPTER VI.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. A verb may be broadly divided into two parts, *finite* and *infinite*, the latter being better known as the *infinitive mood*.

2. A *finite* verb is one that is *limited* (Lat. *finitus*) by persons and numbers; as

Caius walks in the garden =

Caius in horto ambulat.

Here 'walks' is a *finite* verb, because the action of walking is limited to Caius.

3. An *infinitive* is not so limited; as

To walk in the garden is very healthy =

In horto ambulare saluberrimum est.

Here the action of walking is *not* limited to any particular person or persons, and is consequently *infinitive*.

4. The translation of the present infinitive active into Latin often presents difficulty to the learner; we will, therefore, note here a few of the ways in which it may be done.

5. The pupil should bear in mind that the present infinitive in Latin is a sort of *Verbal Noun*, *i.e.* a verb partaking of the nature of a noun, and may, therefore, be used after such verbs as the following:

Possum = I am able

Volo = I wish

Audeo = I dare

Nolo = I do not wish

Statuo = I determine

Malo = I prefer

where the infinitive following represents an *object* after the verb, and is called *prolative*, because it *carries on* the sense of the verb on which it depends.

6. On the other hand, the present infinitive active must never be used in Latin when in English it means a *purpose*.

e.g. I come *to see* the games may *not* be translated Venio ludos *spectare*, but in one of the six following ways :

- (1) Ut (with subj.) = Ut ludos spectem.
 - (2) Qui „ (after verbs of sending). See Cap. IV. G. 4.
 - (3) Supine = ludos spectatum.
 - (4) Future part. = ludos spectaturus.
 - (5) Gerundive } = ad ludos spectandos.
with ad }
 - (6) With causâ = ludos spectandi causâ.
- But, *To look at* games is pleasant =
Spectare ludos gratum est.

Here '*to look at*' may be translated by the present infinitive, because it means the *fact of* to look at games, and is more of a noun.

7. Again, the Present Infinitive must not be used in Latin after verbs of *asking, commanding, advising, and striving*, but *ut* = that, and *ne* = that not, or lest, with the subjunctive, instead of pres. inf. 'to' and 'not to'; which, however, must be used after 'jubeo = I order,' and 'conor = I attempt.'

- e.g.* I ask you *to do it* = Rogo *ut* facias
 I advise you *not to do it* = Moneo *ne* facias
 I will strive *to do it* = Nitari *ut* faciam;
 but, I attempt *to do it* = Facere conor
 I order you *to do it* = Te facere jubeo.

See also Appendix L.

8. Under this head we may notice such expressions as the following, in which the English present Infinitive is not to be rendered into Latin by the present Infinitive :

- (a) I have nothing *to give* you =
 Nihil habeo *quod* tibi *dem*
 Lit. which I may give you.

- (b) He is worthy *to be loved* =
Dignus est qui ametur:
 Lit. who may be loved.
- (c) He gave the sticks to him *to break* =
Baculos ei frangendos dedit.
- (d) He handed over the captives *to be slain* =
Captivos occidendos tradidit.
- (e) I am not the man *to do it* =
Non is sum qui faciam.

9. It may be as well here to state the rule for

Sequence of Tenses ;

i.e. the rule which regulates the tense of the subjunctive mood in the second clause of a sentence.

Principal Tenses.

Present	}	are followed by	}	subjunctive.
Future simple				
Perfect (with <i>have</i>)				
		Present		
		Perfect		

Historic Tenses.

Imperfect	}	are followed by	}	subjunctive.
Pluperfect				
Perfect (without <i>have</i>)				
		Imperfect		
		Pluperfect		

10. The following examples will show that where the English Infinitive has to be rendered into Latin by 'ut' with the subjunctive, the sequence in the tenses is the same as in English :

(a) I come	}	to see = that I may.
I will come		
I have come		
Vēnio	}	ut <i>spectem</i> .
Vēniam		
Vēni (princ.)		

(b) I was coming	}	to see = that I might.
I had come		
I came		
Vēniebam	}	ut <i>spectare</i> em.
Vēneram		
Vēni (hist.)		

(c) And so with all the verbs of 'asking,' &c., mentioned in (7), the same sequence should be observed; and the pupil will find it easier to turn the sentence round in *English* first, substituting 'that I may or *might*' for 'to.'

11. The present Infinitive *passive* also presents some difficulty in consequence of 'to be' being able to be translated in *three* different ways; we will now proceed to deal with them.

12. When 'to be' is purely *indefinite* and refers to no particular person or thing, it should be rendered by the present infinitive passive; as,

To be heard (i.e. listened to) is pleasant =
Audiri gratum est.

13. When 'to be' refers to some definite thing, and follows such adjectives as easy, difficult, &c., it should be rendered by the Passive Supine; this will be referred to again under the head of *Supine*, as,

This is easy *to be done* (or to do) = Hoc facile est *factu*;
 so also This is pleasant to hear =
 Hoc gratum est *auditu*.

14. When 'to be' refers to some definite person or thing that *is to* (i.e. must) be done something to, it should be translated into Latin by the gerundive; as,

He is a man *to be* (that must be) *heard* =
 Vir est *audiendus*.
 This book is *to be sent* to Rome =
 Hic liber Romam *mittendus* est.

15. The three ways, then, in which the English Present Infinitive Passive may be rendered into Latin are as follows:

(a) Indefinite = Present Infinitive—

To be listened to is pleasant =

Audiri gratum est.

(b) Definite, after *adjectives* = Passive Supine—

This is pleasant to hear (or *to be heard*) =

Hoc auditu gratum est.

(c) Referring to some person or thing that *is to be*, *i.e.*, *must be*, &c. = gerundive—

He is a man *to be heard* = *Vir est audiendus*.

HISTORIC INFINITIVE.

1. We may here notice the above use of the infinitive mood, where sometimes it seems to have a *nominative* as its subject instead of, as will be explained in the next chapter, an accusative.

2. It is used to impart greater vividness to a narrative, and corresponds to our use of the *present* tense in narrating a *past* event. Sallust is especially fond of it. It may be explained as depending on 'cœpit' or 'cœperunt' understood.

e.g. Pars optare locum, et manibus subvolvere saxa =

Part (begin to) select a position, and roll up stones with their hands.

CHAPTER VII.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

1. As we have been dealing largely with the Infinitive mood, this may be considered a convenient place in which to deal with the above great construction of Latin. It is so called because it is a sentence in which the principal subjects are all *accusative* case, and their predicates *infinitive* mood.

2. It is called also 'Oratio Obliqua' or Indirect Narration, because the *exact* words of the speaker are not given, but only the *substance* of what he said. Indirect Narration is introduced in the English by the conjunction 'that' expressed or understood.

3. *Verbs of*

Saying
Knowing
Hearing
Feeling
Perceiving
Thinking
Understanding
—
It is certain
It is plain, &c.

which in *English* are
followed by
'that';
are in *Latin* followed
by
accusative and infinitive.

4. In translating a sentence after any of the above verbs into Latin leave out the word 'that.'

5. Translate all your *principal* subjects after the word 'that' by the *accusative* case—same number as they were before.

6. Translate all your *principal* verbs by the *infinitive* mood—same voice and tense as before.

7. Keep all your *subordinate* subjects, *i.e.* relatives, and those which follow conjunctions, in the *nominative* case.

8. Translate all your *subordinate* verbs by the *subjunctive* mood—same voice and tense as before. It is better to render the perfect *indefinite*, *i.e.*, perfect *without* 'have,' by the *imperfect*, not perfect subjunctive.

9. The *Indicative* mood is only used in Oratio Obliqua when the clause in which it occurs is a remark thrown in by the speaker, and not part of the original narrative; and as the young pupil will rarely meet with this, he should be cautioned against using the Indicative *at all* in Oratio Obliqua.

10. We will now give instances of the above before proceeding any further with the study of this important construction :

The dog died yesterday = Canis heri mortuus est.

I hear that the dog died yesterday = Audio canem heri mortuum esse.

I hear that the dog, which bit the man, died yesterday = Audio canem, qui hominem morderet, heri mortuum esse.

11. Great care should be taken to make the participles in the compound tenses of the Infinitive mood, *i.e.* the Future Active and Perfect Passive agree in Gender, Number, and Case with the accusative subject.

e.g. I hear that the king will come =

Audio regem venturum esse.

I hear that the city has been taken =

Audio urbem captam esse.

The use of the Future Infinitive Passive will be explained more fully by itself later on.

12. *Verbs of*

Promising	}	which in English take <i>Present</i>
Hoping		Infinitive, in Latin take
Engaging		Future, with <i>accusative</i>
Undertaking		subject.

The verb 'to pretend' also requires the accusative to be expressed.

e.g. He pretends to be mad =
 He pretends *that he is* mad =
 Simulat *se* furere.

13. Before translating into Latin, turn into another *English* form.

e.g. He promises to come =
 He promises *that he will* come.

14. Great care must be taken to make the accusative future participle agree in *gender and number* with the subject of the *first* sentence :

The king promises to come =
 Rex se venturum promittit.

The queen promises to come =
 Regina se venturam promittit.

The kings promise to come =
 Reges se venturos promittunt.

The queens promise to come =
 Reginae se venturas promittunt.

15. 'Should' is a sign of *present* infinitive.

'Would' ,, *future* infinitive.

e.g. It is a good thing that he *should* come =

Bonum est eum *venire*.

He said that he *would* come =

Dixit se *venturum esse*.

16. When the action of the infinitive goes on at the *same time* as that of the *principal* verb, the *present* infinitive should be used; when it is represented as taking place *before* it, the *perfect*: as

It is plain that he *is* a good man =
Constat eum bonum *esse*.

It is plain that he *was* a good man =
Constat eum bonum *fuisse*.

It *was* plain that he *was* a good man =
Constabat eum bonum *esse*.

17. Present Infinitive = present *and* imperfect
Perfect „ = perfect *and* pluperfect
Future „ = ‘will’ *and* ‘would’

18. In *continued* ‘Oratio Obliqua,’ *ordinary* questions are put in the ‘imperfect subjunctive,’ *rhetorical* questions in the ‘Accusative with Infinitive’; and ‘let’ is a sign of the *imperfect* subjunctive.

- (a) What did they think must be done? =
Quid faciendum esse censerent?
(b) What could they do against such armies?
Let them go away, &c. =
Quid eos contra tantos exercitus facere
posse? Abirent, &c.

CHAPTER VIII.

FUTURE INFINITIVE PASSIVE.

1. This tense is a union of the present infinitive passive of the verb = I go, used impersonally, and the active supine in -um, depending on the verb of motion.

2. It is used in 'Oratio Obliqua'; and it will be seen that the accusative before it is not the *subject*, but the *object* of the verb, being governed in fact by the active supine, which remains invariable.

3. The young pupil must be reminded that it is the *supine* and not the perfect participle passive that is here used.

4. We will proceed to explain by means of an instance :

I believe that the city *will* be taken =
Credo urbem *captum* iri.

I believe that the city *has been* taken =
Credo urbem *captam* esse.

5. In the *first* sentence 'iri' is the infinitive depending on 'credo,' and has no subject; 'captum' is the active supine depending on the verb of motion 'iri'; and 'urbem' is the *object* of the supine 'captum,' which remains invariable. Whereas in the second sentence 'urbem' is the *subject* of the perfect infinitive passive, and 'captam' is the perfect participle passive, and takes the gender and number of 'urbem.'

6. Another, and perhaps more elegant, way of translating

the future infinitive passive in 'Oratio Obliqua' is by the use of 'fore ut' with the subjunctive mood:

I believe that the city will be taken =

Credo urbem captum iri.

Lit. I believe that it is being gone to take the city.

Or, Credo fore ut urbs capiatur

Lit. I believe that it will be (the case) that the city is taken.

So also in the past tense:

I believe that the city would be taken =

Credebam fore ut urbs caperetur.

Lit. I believed that it would be (the case) that the city was taken.

7. This construction may also be used with such verbs as 'possum = I am able,' which have no future infinitive or participle.

e.g. I believe that Caesar will be able to take the city =

Credo fore ut Caesar urbem capere possit.

Lit. I believe that it will be the case that Caesar is, &c.

I believed that Caesar would be able to take the city =

Credebam fore ut Caesar urbem capere posset.

Lit. I believed that it would be the case that Caesar was, &c.

CHAPTER IX.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

1. This construction is so called because it is a union (generally) of a noun and participle in the *ablative case*, *freed from* (Lat. *absolutus*) dependence on the rest of the sentence.

2. Just as a monarch is called absolute when he is freed from dependence on anything but his own will, so the Ablative Absolute is a construction standing entirely by itself.

3. There is *no* perfect participle *active* in Latin, except to deponent and semi-deponent verbs ; and

juratus = having sworn, pransus = having dined,
cœnatus = having supped.

4. So that when you want to turn an English Perfect Participle Active into Latin, if the verb be *intransitive*, use 'quum = when' with the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

e.g. Caius, having walked in the fields, returned home =
Caius, quum in agris ambulavisset, domum rediit.

5. If the verb be *transitive*, the same construction may also be used ; but the neater way is by the

Ablative Absolute.

Put your substantive first, turn 'having' into 'being,' and put both noun and participle in the *ablative case*, in the gender and number of the noun.

e.g. Caius, having drawn his sword, rushed upon the foe =
Caius, the sword being drawn =
Caius, ense stricto, in hostes ruit.

N.B. The Possessive Adjectives 'mine,' 'his,' &c., are hardly ever seen in the Ablative Absolute.

6. Though the participle that is, perhaps, most commonly used with this construction is the Perfect Passive, the Present and Future Active may also be used, but not the *gerundive*.

e.g. Anco regnante = Ancus being king.

Cyro morituro = Cyrus being about to die.

7. This construction is also found

(a) With two nouns ; as

Teucro duce = Teucer being leader.

(b) A noun and an adjective ; as

Crasso sospite = Crassus being safe.

(c) A pronoun and a noun ; as

Te judice = thou being judge.

(d) A pronoun and an adjective ; as

Me vivo = in my lifetime.

8. As this construction is so often represented by the words 'being' or 'having been,' the pupil should be warned that these words do not *always* represent an ablative absolute : the following explanation may, therefore, be deemed useful.

9. When the participle with 'having been' refers to the *subject* of the sentence, it will be kept in the *nominative* case ; as

Dionysius, having been expelled from Syracuse, taught boys at Corinth = Dionysius, Syracusis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebat.

Here the participle 'having been expelled' refers to the subject 'Dionysius,' and is, therefore, *nominative*.

10. But when the participle 'having been' refers neither to the subject nor object of the sentence, it should be put in the *ablative* with the word to which it refers ; as

Dionysius having been expelled from Syracuse, the state enjoyed lasting peace = Dionysio Syracusis expulsus, civitas diutinâ pace fruebatur.

Here 'Dionysius having being expelled' is *not* the subject, but 'state' is ; so it is *ablative absolute*.

11. Here may also be introduced another participial construction. When two transitive verbs govern the same object in English, the first should be made a perfect participle passive in agreement with the object; as

The Greeks took Troy and burnt it —
 The Greeks burnt *taken Troy* =
 Graeci Trojam captam incenderunt.

12. It should be carefully borne in mind that a clause with the English Present Participle in it must often be rendered in Latin by the *ablative absolute*. The following rule may serve to explain it:

When the action represented by the English Present Participle goes on *at the same time as* the action of the Principal Verb, it may be rendered in Latin also by the Present Participle; as

Horatius entered the city, *carrying* the spoils before him =
 Horatius urbem iniit, spolia prae se *gerens*.

Here 'carrying' is rendered by the Present Participle 'gerens,' because Horatius was carrying *at the same time* as he entered.

13. But when the action of the Present Participle takes place *before* that of the Principal Verb, it, and the noun with it, should be rendered by the *Ablative Absolute*; as

Drawing his sword, he rushed upon the foe =
Ense stricto, hostibus irruit.

Here 'drawing his sword' is rendered by the 'ablative absolute,' because he *first* drew, and *then* rushed.

14. If the Present Participle be that of an *Intransitive* verb, 'quum = when,' with the Pluperfect Subjunctive, should be used; as

Rising from his seat, he thus addressed them =
 Quum e sella surrexisset, ita eos allocutus est,
 because he *first* rose, and *then* spoke.

15. A *finite* verb in English can often be elegantly rendered by a participle in Latin, with one clause instead of two :

As I was leaving the city, he met me =
Mihi urbe *excedenti* occurrit.

16. It must be borne in mind that the word participle is derived from *pars* = a part, and *capio* = I take; and is so called because it *partakes* of the nature both of a verb and adjective.

17. When it is used as a verb it governs the same case as the verb from which it comes; as

Let us avoid things that hurt *us* =
Nobis (dat.) nocentia vitemus.

18. When it is used as an adjective it takes the number, gender, and case of the noun with which it goes: as

A flowing beard = *Promissa barba*.
Lit. a let-down beard.

CHAPTER X.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

1. As we have been speaking of Participles, we may as well here introduce the way they are used with the only auxiliary verb in Latin, viz. the verb 'to be,' *esse*.

2. The three following Participles may be used with all the tenses of the verb 'sum':

(a) The future active; as

amaturus sum = I am about to love.

(b) The perfect passive; as

amatus sum = I have been loved.

(c) The gerundive; as

amandus sum = I am to be loved.

3. The *Present Participle Active* may not so be used; amans sum would not mean 'I am *loving*,' but 'I am a *lover*.'

4. The use of the verb 'sum' with the above-named participles is what is known as the

Periphrastic Conjugation,

and corresponds to the use of auxiliary verbs, in which the English verb is especially rich, to make up, as we said at the commencement of the work, for the lack of 'inflexion.' 'Periphrastic' is derived from two Greek words signifying 'around' and 'to speak,' just as the English word 'periphrasis' signifies a '*roundabout*' expression.

CHAPTER XI.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

1. The *gerunds* in -di, -do, -dum are *verbal nouns*, and are used as the oblique cases of the present infinitive active when that tense is used as a noun substantive.

2. The *gerundive*, sometimes called the Future Participle Passive, is a *verbal adjective*, and signifies some action that must take place in the Future.

3. As the uses of the gerund and gerundive in Latin are very closely interwoven, and seem to present great difficulty to beginners, we will proceed to explain them as fully and carefully as possible.

4. When the English present participle in -ing signifies a definite *person or thing* doing anything, it must be rendered in Latin by the *present participle*.

e.g. Balbus sits *writing* = Balbus *scribens* sedet.

Here *writing* refers to the *person* Balbus, so is *present participle*.

5. But when it signifies the mere *action*, without reference to any definite person or thing performing it, it must be rendered into Latin by the *Present Infinitive declined by the gerunds*; and as this is our first explanation of the use of the gerund, we will proceed to give an illustration of each case.

6. (a) *Writing* is advantageous to many =
Scribere multis prodest.

Here *writing* means the mere *action* of writing, without any reference to the person who writes, so is present infinitive.

- (b) He is prone to *writ(ing)* =
Pronus est ad scribendum (acc.).

This is an instance of the *accusative* case of the gerund, which must only be used after *prepositions*, the present Infinitive being used as the object of such verbs as 'I am able,' 'I wish,' &c. From this we get such expressions as

Inter ambulandum, bibendum, &c. =

While (lit. among) walking, drinking, &c.

- (c) He is fond of writing =
Studiosus est scribendi (gen.).

Of writing here means of the *action* of writing: *studiosus est scribentis* would mean, 'he is fond of a *person* writing,' and have quite a different meaning: for one may be very fond of a *writer*, but have a great dislike to *writing itself*.

- (d) He is fit for writing = *Idoneus est scribendo* (dat.).

- (e) He lives by writing = *Scribendo vivit* (abl.).

So that we see in all the above instances from (a) to (e) the word *writing* means the *action*, and is translated by the *present infinitive and gerunds*.

7. In rule 6 we have used the verb 'to write' in its *intransitive* sense; consequently the examples given in it only show the uses of the gerunds of a Latin *intransitive* verb; we will now proceed to give an example of the use of the gerund of a *transitive* verb in Latin.

8. We have stated in Cap. IX., 17, that a participle governs the same case as the verb from which it comes; the same may be said of a gerund, which is a sort of participle. Therefore we may say, He is fond of writing a letter = *Studiosus est scribendi epistolam*, using the gerund and the direct object after it. This, however, is not so common as what is known as

9. *Gerundive Attraction.*

Put your noun first, attracting it into the case of the gerund; and instead of the gerund use the *gerundive*, attracting that into the number and gender of the noun.

- e.g.* He is fond of writing a letter =
 He is fond of a letter to be written =
 Studiosus est epistolae scribendae.

10. The above construction may be applied to all the cases of the gerund.

- e.g.* He is prone to write letters =
 Pronus est ad epistolas scribendas.
 He lives by writing letters =
 Epistolis scribendis vivit.
 But, He is fond of writing letters =
 Epistolas scribendi studiosus est
 is better than Epistolarum scribendarum.

11. The following idioms in connection with the gerund and gerundive should be carefully noticed :

- (a) To be able to run = Currendo (dat.) esse.
- (b) Caesar had a bridge built =
 Caesar pontem faciendum curavit.
- (c) To be equal to leading the army =
 Exercitui ducendo esse.
- (d) To tend to the increase of the state =
 Civitatis augendae esse.
- (e) He gave them a city to dwell in =
 Urbem habitandam dedit.

12. Gerundive = must.

We now come to the other use of the gerundive, which signifies still more clearly actual necessity, and is represented in English by *We must* do something or other.

13. If the verb be *intransitive*, use the neuter nominative singular of the gerundive with *est* ; as

We must walk = It is to be walked = Ambulandum est.

14. If the verb be *transitive*, but one of those governing the

dative of the direct object, still use -dum est, and put the *dative* after it ; as

We must spare our foes = *Parcendum est hostibus.*

Lit. It is to be spared to our foes,

15. But if the verb be an ordinary transitive verb governing the *accusative*, do not use the direct construction, but turn the object of the English sentence into the subject, and make the gerundive agree with it in number, gender, and case ; as

We must write a letter = A letter is to be written =

Epistola est scribenda, not Scribendum est epistolam.

16. The *subject* of the gerundive, *i.e.* the *person* who *must*, is put in the *dative* when it is definitely expressed ; as

I must walk = *Mihi ambulandum est.*

The boy must write a letter = *Puero scribenda est epistola.*

17. But in the case of a verb which governs the *dative*, to avoid the confusion which would arise from the use of *two* datives, the person who must is put in the *ablative* with the preposition 'a' or 'ab' expressed before it ; as

Caius must spare his foes = *A Caio parcendum est hostibus.*

18. Note carefully the use of the gerundive in *Oratio Obliqua* ; as

He says *that he* must walk = *Dicit sibi ambulandum esse*

Also with other tenses than 'est' ; as

I *had* to walk = *Mihi ambulandum erat.*

I *shall have* to walk = *Mihi ambulandum erit.*

19. To sum up, therefore, what we have said concerning the use of the gerund and gerundive in Latin, we may note briefly the three following points in connection with them :

(a) The Latin *gerunds* represent the English present participle in -ing when it means the action of an *intransitive* verb.

(b) The Latin *gerundive* in the oblique cases in agreement with a noun represents the English present participle in -ing, meaning the action of a *transitive* verb.

(c) The *gerundive* in the *nominative* cases, singular and plural, with 'est' or 'sunt,' is equivalent to our 'must.'

20. The two following points in connection with the gerundive should be carefully noticed:

(a) 'To be' is not always the sign of the gerundive, but sometimes means 'able.'

e.g. This book *is* nowhere *to be found* =

Hic liber nusquam *inveniri potest* ;

but, This book *is to be found* before night =

Hic liber ante noctem *inveniendus est*.

(b) The person who must *do* something is to be put in the dative, not the person who must *be done* something *to*: save when the verb governs dative (see 14).

e.g. *Those* who have done such things *must flee* =

Iis, qui talia fecerunt, *fugiendum est* ;

but, *Those* who have done such things *are to be praised* =

Ii, qui talia fecerunt, *sunt laudandi*.

CHAPTER XII.

SUPINES.

1. The *Supines* are cases of a Verbal Substantive, which is always of the *fourth* declension; consequently all nouns which are derived from the *supine* of a verb are of the *fourth* declension.

e.g. Audio = I hear; sup. auditum;
hence auditus — ūs = hearing.

2. The *Active* supine, therefore, is the *accusative* case of such a noun; and the passive supine is the *dative* or *ablative* case:

acc. auditum = in order to hear	
dat.)	} auditu = for or in hearing.
or)	
abl.)	

3. The *active* supine is generally used after verbs of motion, such as 'to come,' 'to go,' 'to send,' though after the verb 'to send' *qui with the subjunctive* is more generally used.

e.g. (a) I come to see = *Spectatum* venio.
 (b) I go to fetch water = *Aquatum* eo.
 (c) I send to ask = *Rogatum* mitto.

In the above instances the supines will be seen to be the accusative cases of nouns, used after verbs of motion:

(a) *Spectatum* lit. to the seeing.
(b) *Aquatum* ,, to the fetching.
(c) *Rogatum* ,, to the asking.

4. The *passive* supine is used after certain adjectives, such as 'easy,' 'difficult,' &c.; and it is generally rendered into English by our Present Infinitive *Active* (not passive).

e.g. These apples are sweet *to taste* =

Haec poma sunt dulcia *gustatu* ;

gustatu lit. = in the tasting.

5. The two following expressions will be familiar to every reader of Virgil :

(a) Miserabile visu = ah ! hapless sight.

(b) Mirabile dictu = oh ! wondrous tale,

(a) Visu *lit.* in the seeing.

(b) Dictu ,, in the telling.

CHAPTER XIII.

ADVERBS.

1. There are, of course, a very large number of adverbs in Latin, which may be best learnt by constant practice. We, therefore, intend here merely to notice peculiarities in connection with a few of them.

2. A Latin adverb generally ends in *-ē* or *-ter*; as

Dignus = worthy; dignē = worthily.

Fortis = brave; fortiter = bravely.

3. An adverb of this kind is not *of itself* inflected; but as we have to use an adverb in the comparative and superlative degrees, we may say that those degrees are *borrowed* from the adjective, not *formed* from the adverb.

4. *Comparison of adverbs.*

For the *comparative* of an adverb use the neuter singular of the comparative of the corresponding adjective; for the *superlative*, the superlative of the adjective with *-us* changed into *-e*.

	Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
<i>e.g.</i> Worthy	—Dignus	dignior	dignissimus
Worthily	—Dignē	dignius	dignissime
Brave	—Fortis	fortior	fortissimus
Bravely	—Fortiter	fortius	fortissime

NOTE.—Comp. *fortius*, *not* *fortitius*, which it would have been if formed from ‘*fortiter*’ instead of from the adjective.

5. A numeral adverb generally ends in *-ies* or *-iens*, the first part of the word corresponding to the cardinal or ordinal number.

e.g. septem = seven; septies = seven times
vicesimus = twentieth; vices = twenty times.

6. Note carefully the following:

- (a) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{aeque} \\ \text{perinde} \end{array} \right\} \text{ ac si} = \text{just as if.}$
 (b) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{haud aliter quam} \\ \text{haud secus ac} \end{array} \right\} = \text{not otherwise than.}$
 (c) nunquam = never
 nusquam = nowhere.
 (d) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{olim} \\ \text{quondam} \end{array} \right\} = \text{once (upon a time)}$
 semel = once (a single time, not twice).
 (e) semper = ever, *i.e.* always
 unquam = ever at any time
 usquam = anywhere.
 (f) simul = at the same time
 simul ac = as soon as.

Simul is sometimes used for *simul ac*.

7. Adverbs of Place are often apt to be confused; we will, therefore, give the leading ones in parallel columns:

<i>Rest at</i>	<i>Motion to</i>	<i>Motion from</i>
Ubi? = where?	Quo? = whither?	Unde? = whence?
Hic = here	Huc = hither	Hinc = hence
Illic } = there	Illuc } = thither	Illinc } = thence
Ibi }	Eo }	Inde }
Ibidem = in the same place	Eodem = to the same place	Indidem = from the same place

Note that in English we often use 'there' when it ought strictly to be 'thither'; in such cases 'there' must be translated by 'thither' into Latin.

e.g. The Romans fled *there* = Romani eo perfugerunt.

8. *Modo* = lately, just now, only.

The following uses of this adverb may thus be noticed;

(a) Advenis *modo*? = are you *just* come?

(b) *Modo* ait — *modo* negat =

At one time he says 'yes'—*at another* 'no.'

(c) *Non modo* — sed etiam = Not *only* — but also.

Non modo stands for *non modo non* when the same verb belongs to both clauses.

e.g. He was not only *not* a coward, but a very brave man =
Non modo ignavus, sed fortissimus fuit.

The pupil can easily see by the *meaning* of the sentence when *non modo* stands for *non modo non*. In the above sentence it would be absurd to say, 'He was not only a coward, but a very brave man,' because the same person cannot possibly be both.

9. (a) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Nimis} \\ \text{Nimum} \end{array} \right\} = \text{too much}; (b) \text{parum} = \text{too little}.$

(a) 'Nimis,' as an adjective, should be used with the genitive case.

Haec loca *lucis* habent *nimis* =

These places have *too much light*.

'Nimum' is an *adverb*:

O fortunatos *nimum*! = O far too happy they!

Observe the following idiom in connection with 'too.'

He is *too* brave to run away =

Fortior est *quam ut* aufugiat

(Lit. he is braver than that he should run away).

(b) *Parum* felix = *infelix* = too little i.e. *unhappy*.

10. *Primo* = at first.

We may here notice the following uses of the different parts of *primus*:

(a) *Primus* fecit = he *was the first* to do it.

(b) *Primum* fecit = it was *the first thing* he did.

(c) *Primo* fecit = *at first* he did it,

11. *Quidem* = indeed.

Pupils should be very careful not to confuse this word with *quidam* = a certain one.

Quidem should never stand *first* in a sentence,

With 'ne' before it, quidem has the meaning of *even*. and the words emphasised by 'not — even' should be placed *between* ne and quidem.

He does *not* fear *even* Caesar =

Ne Caesarem *quidem* timet.

Equidem, for quidem, is strictly a compound of *ego* and *quidem*, and should only be used with the *first person singular*, though it is found with other persons.

12. *Quotidie* and *indies* both mean 'daily,' but with this difference:

Quotidie means daily occurrence.

Indies „ daily increase, and decrease.

e.g. He rides every day = *Quotidie* equitat;

but, The number is increased every day =
Numerus indies augetur.

13. *Tandem* and *demum* both mean 'at length'; *tandem*, however, sometimes has the meaning of 'pray.'

e.g. What were you doing, *pray*? =

Quid tandem agebatis?

Demum, too, may sometimes be translated by 'only.'

e.g. To obey the laws, that *only* is true pleasure =

Legibus parere, ea demum est vera voluptas.

14. *Utro* = of one's own accord.

This is a very peculiar word, and often requires a translation of its own. Some say it is derived from *ultra* = beyond, *i.e.* something *beyond* what you need do; while others say it is from *volo* = I am willing, *i.e.* to do a thing *voluntarily*.

We will quote an instance of its use from Virgil, which will give some idea of how it may sometimes be translated:

His lacrimis vitam damus, et miserescimus *ultra* =

At these tears we give (Sinon) his life, ay! and pity him *into*
the bargain.

i.e. We did *more* than just let him go ; we pitied him, and took him among us.

15. We may here also call attention to the fact that the Latins use an *adjective* in agreement with the subject of the sentence, where we in English would use an *adverb*.

e.g. Caius sins *unwillingly* = Caius *invitus* peccat.

Lit. Caius (being) unwilling sins.

They were *gladly* ploughing the salt foam with the brazen prow = *Laeti spumas salis aere ruebant.*

Lit. They (the Trojans) (being) glad were ploughing, &c.

Of course the expression *Lubenter feci* = I *gladly* did it is quite admissible.

16. Before leaving adverbs we may as well notice three words which are used both as adverbs and prepositions ; when used as the latter they require an *ablative* case after them.

Coram	}	= openly	}	(adverbs).
Palam				
Clam		= secretly		

Coram = in the presence of (preposition)

Clam = without the knowledge of (preposition).

e.g. She burnt them *in the king's presence* =

Eos *coram rege* deussit.

He did it *without his father's knowledge* =

Clam patre id fecit.

Note that king's and father's are *ablative*, not *genitive*.

17. The pupil must be careful not to confuse certain adverbs, &c., which are alike in sound and spelling.

{ adeo	= so
{ admodum	= quite
{ erga	= towards
{ ergo	= therefore (adverb)
{ frustrā	= in vain (adverb)
{ frustā	= small pieces

{ intereā	= meanwhile
{ interdum	= sometimes
{ interdiu	= by day
{ ita	= so, thus (adverb)
{ iter	= journey
{ iterum	= a second time (adverb)
{ nimium	= too much
{ nimīrum	= forsooth
{ paene	= almost (adverb)
{ penes	= in the power of
{ praecipue	= chiefly (adverb)
{ praecipe	= teach thou
{ profectò	= assuredly (adverb)
{ profecto	= having set forth (dat. and abl. of profectus)
{ quonam	= whither, pray?
{ quoniam	= since
{ quīdem	= indeed (adverb)
{ quīdam	= a certain one
{ ultra	= beyond
{ ultro	= voluntarily

CHAPTER XIV.

PREPOSITIONS.

1. Prepositions, as their name signifies, being derived from *prae* = before, and *positus* = placed, are generally placed *before* the word they govern. They are used to show the relation of a noun or pronoun to some other word in the sentence, and when the case-ending alone is not sufficient to express that relation.

2. All Latin prepositions require the word which follows them to be either in the *accusative* or *ablative* case; the rhymes in Appendix M and N may serve to impress the various prepositions, and the case they govern, upon the pupil.

3. We have said that prepositions are so-called because they are placed *before* the noun they govern. As a rule they are; but 'tenus = up to' and 'versus = towards' are placed after; as

Up to the hilt = *Capulo tenus* (also with gen. pl.)

Towards Rome = *Roman versus*.

4. Certain nouns are sometimes found as prepositions; as

For honour's sake = *Honoris causâ*

For the purpose of hunting = *Venandi gratiâ*.

Note also the indeclinable substantive *instar* = likeness.

A horse the size of a mountain = *Instar montis equum*; where 'instar' seems to be *in apposition* to 'equum'; lit. the *likeness* of a mountain.

5. We will now proceed to take some of the English Prepositions, and notice the different ways in which each can be rendered into Latin.

(a) *About*. When it means 'concerning' it should be translated by *de*; as I have heard much *about* you = *De te multa audiui*; or *super*, as Asking much *about* Hector = *Rogitans super Hectore multa*.

When it refers to *number* by *circa* or *circiter*: as *About* twenty = *circa, circiter viginti*.

To *place* by *circa* or *circum*; as *About* the head = *circum caput*: *About* the city = *circa urbem*.

To *time* by *circa, circiter*; as *About* day-break = *circa primam lucem*; also by *sub*, as *About* night = *sub noctem*.

(b) *Across*. *Trans*; as *Across* the river = *trans flumen*; but *trans*, when compounded with another word, always signifies *change*, as *Trado* = *transdo* = I hand over.

(c) *Before*. When used of *place*, it should be rendered by *ante*; as *Before* the eyes = *ante oculos*. *Prae* = 'before' is generally used in idioms, as *Prae te bonus est* = He is a good man *compared with* (lit. *before*) you; *Prae me speciem gero* = I wear the appearance of; lit. I carry *before* myself the appearance of.

(d) *By*. This preposition should be translated by *a* before a word beginning with a *consonant*, and *ab* before *h* or a *vowel*, when the action is done by a *living agent*, and *not* when it is, done by one *without life*; as

The city was taken *by* Caesar =

Urbs a Caesare capta est.

The city was taken *by* violence and fraud =

Urbs vi ac fraude capta est.

'*By force*' may also be rendered by '*per vim*.'

By = by means of a living agent = *per*; as *Per exploratores* = *by scouts*.

By, in solemn adjurations, = *per*; as I pray you *by* the gods = *Per te deos oro*.

(e) *For*. When it means 'on behalf of,' this word should be rendered by *pro*; as

Let us die *for* our country = *Pro patriā moriamur*.

When it means 'by reason of,' it should be rendered by *prae*; as

I could not speak *for* grief =

Prae dolore loqui non poteram.

When it means 'on account of,' it should be rendered by *ob*; as

Famous *for* intellect = *Clarus ob ingenium*.

When it signifies 'price,' by the Ablative *without* preposition; as

This man sold his country *for* gold =

Vendidit hic auro patriam.

The place *for* which one sets out is put in the *accusative*, without a preposition, if it be the name of a town or small island; as

I set out *for* Paris = *Lutetiam proficisor*.

But if it be the name of a *country*, 'for' should be translated by 'in'; as

I set out *for* Italy = *In Italiam proficiscor*.

When 'for' stands for 'time' it should be rendered by 'in' with *accusative*,

He appointed the meeting *for* the next day =

Indixit comitia in posterum diem.

(f) *From*. From (simply) = a or ab; as

From the city = ab urbe.

From = out of = e or ex as

From out the city = ex urbe.

From = down from = de; as

Down from the mountain = de monte.

The preposition 'from' should *not* be translated before the names of towns or small islands; as

We have come *from* Troy = *Trojā venimus*.

Before a *country* it should be 'a' or 'ab'; as

We have come *from Italy* = *Ab Italiā* venimus.

(g) *In, into.* Though the rule for the translation of words after the prepositions 'in, into' is very simple, so many mistakes are made about it, that it may be as well to notice it here.

'Into,' which signifies *motion*, should have the word after it in the *accusative* case.

'In,' which signifies *rest*, should have the word after it in the *ablative* case.

'In,' when it signifies *point of time*, should *not* be translated; but when it signifies *rest at a place* it should. The following sentence will serve to illustrate the above three rules.

In summer we live *in the fields*, but *in winter* we remove *into the city* = *Aestate in agris habitamus, hieme autem in urbem migramus.*

'In summer,' 'in winter' signify *point of time*, therefore have *no* preposition: 'in the fields' means *rest at*, therefore is 'in' with the *ablative*: 'into the city' means *motion*, therefore is 'in' with *accusative*.

'In,' when it means *in an author* should be translated by 'apud'; as

We find in *Homer* = *Apud Homerum* invenimus.

N.B. In *Homero* = *in the case of Homer.*

Note also

In the rear = *a tergo*, In anger = *ab irā*.

(h) *Of.* This preposition is, of course, generally the sign of the *genitive* case, and is, therefore, not often translated. There are, however, occasions on which it is: the following are some of them:

When it means *concerning*, it should be translated by *de*.

e.g. I spoke much *of* you = *Multa de te* locutus sum.

When it means the *material* of which a thing consists, it should also be rendered by *de*.

e.g. A seat of living turf = *Vivo de cespite sedes*.
When it means *out of, from among* by *ex*.

e.g. One of his friends = *Unus ex amicis*.

Note 'qui omnes' = all of whom.

(i) *To*. The word which has 'to' before it should never be rendered by the Dative after *verbs of motion*, *i.e.* coming, going, or sending, but always by *ad* with the accusative, unless it be the name of a *town or small island*, when it should be accusative *without* preposition.

e.g. I go to the city = *Ad urbem eo*,

I go to Troy = *Trojam eo*.

Note also the expression

He sent to Cæsar at Rome =

He sent to Rome to Cæsar =

Romam ad Cæsarem misit.

(j) *Towards*. When this is used to imply *motion*, *versus* should be used;

To go towards Rome = *Romam versus ire*.

But if 'towards' is used of the *feelings*, then *erga* should be used:

Your kindness towards me = *Benevolentia tua erga me*.

(k) *Under, up to*. These prepositions follow the same rule as 'in, into'; *i.e.* when they imply *motion* they should be rendered by 'sub' with *accusative*; when *rest* by 'sub' with *ablative*.

e.g. I go up to the wall = *Sub murum eo*,

I stand under the wall = *Sto sub muro*.

Note also *at the approach of* winter = *Sub hiemem*.

(l) *With*. When this preposition means 'together with,' or implies *attendant circumstances*, it should be rendered by 'cum';
as

I walked with Balbus = *Cum Balbo ambulabam*,

I spoke with grief = *Cum dolore locutus sum*.

Note that after the ablatives of the personal and relative pronouns the preposition 'cum' is joined, making one word of it; as

Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum (for quocum), quibuscum.

But if 'with' means the *instrument* with which anything is done, the preposition should be left out; as

He beat him *with a stick* = *Baculo* eum pulsavit.

'With,' when it means 'at the house of,' should be rendered by 'apud'; as

I dined *with* Balbus yesterday =

Heri *apud* Balbum cœnabam.

Cum Balbo would mean in company with Balbus at someone else's house. In the above sentence 'apud' has the force of the French word 'chez.'

e.g. Apud me = chez moi = at my house, the same as 'domi meae.'

Note also the construction

To have great influence *with* Cæsar =

Apud Caesarem plurimum valere.

(*m*) *Without*. The common Latin word for this preposition is 'sine,' the word 'absque' being rarely found; as

Without doubt = *Sine* dubio.

It may often also be rendered by the adjective 'expers,' which is derived from *ex* = from, and *pars* = a part; lit. without a part or share of, and requires the ablative case after it; as

He left me *without* life = *Me vitâ expertem* reliquit.

Note carefully the following idioms.

He was liberal, *without being* lavish =

Liberalis fuit, *neque tamen ita ut* prodigus *esset*.

Lit. nor however so that he was, &c.

He never saw me *without calling out* =

Me nunquam vidit, *quin exclamaret*.

Lit. but that he called out, &c.

N.B. *Sine* with subjunctive is imperative of *sino*.

Sine sciam = Let me know.

CHAPTER XV.

PREPOSITIONS, &C., USED IN COMPOSITION WITH VERBS.

1. As we have been dealing with prepositions, this may be a convenient place in which to explain the manner in which prepositions are compounded with verbs.

2. In *Latin* a new word is coined by placing the preposition *before* the verb, the former being incorporated with the verb so as to make one complete word; whereas in *English* no such incorporation takes place, the preposition following the verb, except where the Latin form is *anglicised*, as in 'abstain,' 'ascend,' &c.

3. As in this composition of prepositions with verbs sometimes *both* parts of speech retain their original form, sometimes *one* of them undergoes a change, and sometimes *both*, we propose taking each proposition separately, and giving a few instances of the manner in which it is compounded with a verb.

4.	A, ab, abs = from.	
a and mitto	= âmitto	= I lose
ab and âgo	= abîgo	= drive away
abs and tēneo	= abstīneo	= abstain
ab and fēro	= aufero	= take away

5.	Ad = to	
ad and do	= addo	= add
ad and -lācio	= allīcio	= entice
ad and nosco	= agnosco	= know
ad and scando	= ascendo	= ascend
ad and fēro	= affero	= carry to
ad and quaero	= acquīro	= acquire.

6. Ante = before.
- | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|
| ante and căpio | = antecapio | = anticipate |
| ante and cêdo | = antecedo | = precede |
- Note also antecello = excel.
7. Circum = round.
- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| circum and eo | = circumeo | = go round |
| circum and sãlio | = circumsilio | = leap round. |
8. Con- (for cum) = with.
- | | | |
|---------------|------------|-------------------|
| con and păro | = comparo | = get together |
| con and damno | = condemno | = condemn |
| con and arceo | = coerceo | = restrain |
| con and laedo | = collido | = strike together |
| con and tăceo | = conticeo | = be silent |
| con and lëgo | = colligo | = collect |
9. Contra = against.
- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| contra and dico | = contradico | = contradict. |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
10. De = down from.
- | | | |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|
| de and curro | = decurro | = run down |
| de and căpio | = decipio | = deceive |
| de and quãtio | = decutio | = shake down |
| de and lacto | = delecto | = delight. |
11. E and ex = out of.
- | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| e and vöco | = evoco | = call out |
| ex and pello | = expello | = expel |
| ex and fëro | = effero | = carry out |
| ex and hãbeo | = exhibeo | = exhibit |
| ex and plaudo | = explodo | = hiss off |
| ex and quaero | = exquiro | = seek out. |
12. In = in, into.
- | | | |
|--------------|-----------|--------------|
| in and fëro | = infero | = carry in |
| in and pōno | = impono | = place on |
| in and salto | = insulto | = leap upon. |

13. Inter = among.
 inter and cēdo = intercedo = intervene
 inter and fācio = interfīcio = slay
 inter and jācio = interjīcio = throw between
 inter and claudo = interclūdo = cut off.
14. Ob = over against.
 ob and cādo = occīdo = die
 ob and caedo = occīdo = kill
 ob and jacto = objecto = cast in the teeth
 ob and mitto = ōmitto = omit
 ob and tendo = ostendo = show.
15. Prae = before.
 prae and fēro = praefero = prefer
 prae and fācio = praefīcio = set over
 prae and sēdeo = praesīdeo = preside.
16. Pro = for.
 pro and grādior = progrēdior = step forward
 pro and hābeo = prohibeo = prohibit
 pro and rēgo = porrigo = stretch out.
17. Per = through.
 per and lēgo = perlego = read through
 per and fācio = perfīcio = accomplish
 per and pātior = perpētior = endure.
18. Post = after.
 post and pōno = postpono = put after
 post and hābeo = posthabeo = hold after.
19. Sub = under.
 sub and fēro = suffero = put under
 sub and fācio = suffīcio = imbue
 sub and mōveo = summoveo = remove
 sub and cāpio = suscīpio = take up.
 sub and rāpio = surrīpio = filch

20. Trans = across.

trans and fĕro	= transfero	= transfer
trans and do	= trādo	= hand over
trans and āgo	= transĭgo	= pierce through
trans and scando	= transcendo	= climb over.

21. *Inseparable Particles.*

These are not found as distinct words by themselves, but are used in composition with verbs. They are

ambi = about.

ambi- and eo = ambio = canvass

di- and dis- = in different directions

dis- and jungo = disjungo = disjoin

rĕ- = back again

re- and fero = refero = bring back

sĕ- = apart

se- and paro = separo = separate.

22. The following adverbs are also found in composition with verbs:

benè = well

benè and facio = benefacio = benefit

satis = enough

satis and facio = satisfacio = satisfy

malè = badly

malè and dico = maledico = slander.

23. Note that verbs compounded with the prepositions prae—ad—con—sub—ante—post—ob—in—inter; and with the adverbs benè—satis—malè govern a *dative* of the direct or indirect object.

e.g. Caius was over the citadel = Caius *arci* praeerat.

I place Caius over the citadel = Caium *arci* praeficio.

May the Blessed one be blessed = Benedicto benedicatur!

24. We may here notice one or two peculiar idioms in connection with some of these prepositions when used in composition :

(a) He surrounded the city with a wall =
either Muro (abl.) urbem circumdedit
or Murum urbi circumdedit.

(b) He sprinkled the altar with blood =
either Sanguine aram adpersit
or Sanguinem arae (dat.) adpersit.

(c) I prefer honour to riches =
either Divitiis honorem antefero
or Divitias honori posthabeo
lit. I hold riches after honour.

(d) Note also
Anger has cost me this friendship,
lit. Anger has stood to me in this friendship =
Ira mihi hâc amicitîa stetit.

(e) And
He threatens me with death =
Minatur mihi mortem
(lit. He threatens death to me).

(f) And the following passage from Virgil.
Ascanione pater Romanas invidet arces ?
Does his father grudge (to) Ascanius the Roman
citadels ?

CHAPTER XVI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

In *conjunctions*, as with adverbs, we purpose merely noticing the peculiarities in connection with a few that present most difficulty to the learner. We will take those that are most familiar, dealing with each separately.

A.

Antequam	}	= before that,
Priusquam		
Postquam		= after that.

1. The peculiarity of these conjunctions is that their parts are sometimes divided, the first being put in the first clause, and the second at the beginning of the second; though they may, of course, be used as one word.

e.g. We must not sow *before* we plough =
Non *ante* serendum est *quam* aramus.

The verb after these words is put in the *indicative*, except in *Oratio Obliqua*.

2. N.B. Ante = before (preposition)
 Antea = formerly (adverb)
 Antequam = before that (conjunction)
 Post = after (preposition)
 Postea = afterwards (adverb)
 Postquam = after that (conjunction)

3. *Ante* and *post* are sometimes found for *antea* formerly, and *postea* afterwards; but the latter forms are the most common. Pupils should be careful not to confuse the three different parts of speech.

B.

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Dum} \\ \text{Donec} \end{array} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{while} \\ \text{until.} \end{array} \right.$$

1. These conjunctions take the *indicative* when they mark mere *point of time*; but the *subjunctive* when there is any *connection* between the actions of the verbs in both clauses.

e.g. While this was going on at Rome, Hannibal moved his camp = Dum haec Romae aguntur, Hannibal castra movit.

Because there is no *necessary connection* between the events at Rome and in Hannibal's camp.

But He waits till the stream runs down =
Expectat dum defluat amnis.

Because the river running down is the *cause* of his waiting.

2. *Dum* will often be found to stand for *dummodo* with the sense of 'as long as,' or 'provided that.' When used in this sense it must *always* take the *subjunctive*.

e.g. You will be happy, *as long as* you are good =
Felix eris, dum bonus sis.

3. *Donec*, though, perhaps, it more often means 'until,' bears also the sense of 'while,' as in the following well-known passage.

As long as you are prosperous, you will have many friends =
Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos.

C.

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Etsi} \\ \text{Quamvis} \\ \text{Quamquam} \end{array} \right\} = \text{although}$$

1. Of the above 'etsi' and 'quamvis' are more often found with the *subjunctive*, 'quamquam' with the *indicative*. The *subjunctive* represents a thing as *really* doubtful, the *indicative* as not so.

e.g. Although you are (really) brave = Quamquam fortis es.
However brave you may be = Quamvis fortis sis.

2. *Quamvis* may be used as an adverb.

Caius, old *as he was*, rode on horseback =

Caius, *quamvis* senex, equitabat.

D.

Quin = but that.

Quominus = by which the less.

1. The above two words will be better understood by studying the various idioms in which they are each employed, which will be given below.

2. *Quin*—properly written *quîn*—is compounded of *qui*, the old ablative for *quo*, and *ne*, the *e* being dropped. As it is thus, of itself, a negative, care must be taken not to use a negative in the clause which begins with it, but such a clause will be generally found to *follow* a *negative*, such as ‘not doubting,’ ‘not denying,’ ‘not restraining,’ &c. The verb after it must always be *subjunctive*.

- (a) It cannot be denied *that* we are mortal =
Negari non potest *quîn* mortales simus.
- (b) No one doubts that we all sin some time or other =
Nemo dubitat *quîn* omnes aliquando peccemus.
- (c) No one is so foolish *as not to* wish to be happy =
Nemo est tam stultus *quîn* beatus esse velit.
- (d) He could scarcely be restrained from killing himself =
Vix retineri potuit *quîn* se interficeret.
- (e) He never stays here *without* calling =
Nunquam hic commoratur *quîn* conveniat.
- (f) I left nothing undone *to* save you =
Nihil praetermisi *quîn* te servarem.
- (g) I cannot *but* hope that he will come =
Facere non possum *quîn* eum venturum sperem.

- (h) It cannot be *that* he is not dead =
Fieri non potest *quin* mortuus sit.
- (i) I will not object *to* your going =
Non recusabo *quin* eas.
- (j) { Who is there } *but* loves his own children =
 { There is no one }
 { Quis est } *quin* liberos suos amet.
 { Nemo est }
- (k) I was within an ace *of being* killed =
Minimum aberat *quin* interficerer.

N.B. Aberat is *impersonal*; lit. it was a very little distant but that I was killed.

3. *Quominus* is generally used after verbs of *hindering*: it also must have no negative after it, and its verbs must be subjunctive.

- (a) What hinders you *from* coming? =
Quid obstat *quominus* venias?
- (b) I will not object to your looking =
Non recusabo *quominus* aspicias.
- (c) It was owing to you *that* we did *not* finish the war at once
= Per te stetit *quominus* bellum statim conficeremus.

E.

Quando }
Ubi } = when; since = { Quum
Quum } { Quoniam

1. *Quum* = 'when' should generally be followed by the *subjunctive* mood, except in the following cases.

(a) When it simply means 'point of time,' and there is no necessary connection between the clauses.

When I lived at Rome, he came to see me every day =
 Quum Romae *vivebam*, me quotidie convenit.

(b) When the first clause includes the second.

In pleasing him, you please me =
 Quum ei *places*, mihi places.

(c) When it means 'since' of time.

It is five years since you came here =
 Quinque sunt anni quum huc *vēnis* (present).

(d) After verbs of rejoicing, &c.

I rejoice that you are come =
 Gaudeo quum *vēnistī*.

2. In all other instances, such as those in which the second clause follows as a *consequence* of the first, the verb after 'when' should be put in the subjunctive, especially if it be in the *pluperfect*.

When he had come into the temple, he prayed to the gods =
 Quum in templum *venisset*, deos precatus est.

But 'ubi = when' takes pluperfect *indicative*.

When Caesar had perceived this =
 Quod ubi Caesar animadverterat.

3. *Quoniam* = 'since' is usually found with the *indicative*, though the subjunctive is found after it sometimes.

e.g. Since you laugh = quoniam rides.

4. The pupil should be carefully warned against using the word *quum* for when in a *question*. In such sentences the words 'quando' or 'ubi' should always be used.

When will you come ? =
 Quando }
 or } venies ? (*not quum*).
 Ubi }

5. The pupil should also be carefully warned against translating 'when' into Latin before a *noun*, *adjective*, or *participle*. Before those parts of speech we do, in English, use the word 'when'; but in Latin 'quum' is only used before a *finite verb*.

- (a) I did it (*when*) a boy *Puer feci.* =
'*Quum* puer feci' would mean 'when I, a boy, did it.'
- (b) Caius, (*when*) old, used to go on foot =
Caius, *senex*, pedes ire solebat.
- (c) Do not speak to me (*when*) writing =
Ne me allocutus sis *scribentem*.

6. There is a curious use of 'quum,' when it is used as a *co-ordinate* conjunction, instead of a *subordinate*; *co-ordinate* conjunctions being those which connect clauses, but do not influence *mood*, while *subordinate* conjunctions are those which connect clauses, and *do* influence mood.

(a) 'Quum,' followed by 'tum' has the meaning of 'both — and.'

e.g. He was *both* rich *and* happy =
Quum dives *tum* felix erat.

(b) 'Tum — tum' may be used instead of 'quum — tum.'

e.g. He was *both* good *and* kind =
Tum bonus *tum* benignus fuit.

F.

Si = if — nisi = unless.

1. The above are employed in what are known as 'conditional clauses,' and may be conveniently divided into four classes.

- (a) Possibility, without uncertainty.
If I see it, I laugh = Si video, rideo.
- (b) Uncertainty, *with* prospect of decision.
If I see it, I shall laugh = Si videam, ridebo.

(c) Uncertainty, *without* such prospect.

If I were to see it, I should laugh =

(but I'm not likely to see it)

Si viderem, riderem.

(d) (1) Belief that the thing *is* not so.

If I saw it, I should laugh =

(but I don't see it)

Si viderem, riderem.

(2) Belief that the thing *was* not so.

If I had seen it, I should have laughed = Si vidissem,
risissem,

2. Note that in the second clause of No. 2 of the last one we can use the *Imperfect* subjunctive when the action may be represented as continuing to the present time.

e.g. If Troy had conquered, Greece *would now be mourning* =
Si Troja vicisset, Graecia nunc *lugeret*.

3. The rules that apply to si = if apply equally well to nisi = unless.

4. There is a curious use in connection with 'si' that may as well be noted here. When the verb in the conditional clause represents something as certain to happen in the future, before something else has happened, that verb should be put in the *Future Perfect*, which is rendered in English by the Perfect with 'have,' 'si' being translated by 'when.'

e.g. I will sit down, when I have said a few words = Sedebo,
si pauca dixerō.

Lit. *If I shall have said* a few things.

G.

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{(Seu — seu)} \\ \text{(Sive — sive)} \\ \text{Utrum — an} \end{array} \right\} = \text{whether — or.}$$

8. Of the above, the first two (seu — seu, sive — sive) represent one or both of two conditions as absolutely existing; whereas the third (utrum — an) asks for definite information on

the subject. The various uses of the last two will be explained further on, under the head of Latin Questions.

e.g. *Whether* he drinks wine *or* water, he is a strong man =
Seu vinum, *seu* aquam bibit, fortis est.

Tell me *whether* he drinks wine *or* water = Dic mihi
utrum vinum *an* aquam bibat.

2. Perhaps the use of

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{seu} - \text{seu} \\ \text{sive} - \text{sive} \end{array} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{and} \\ \text{and} \end{array} \right. \text{utrum} - \text{an}$$

may be further explained by quoting two passages from Virgil and Ovid, where they have each used *one* pair of words, where the strict usage of Latin would have required *the other*,

(a) "*Dubii seu vivere credant sive extrema pati*" (Virgil) =
 Hesitating *whether* to believe them alive, or paying the last penalty.

Now here, according to strict Latin usage, '*seu — sive*' ought manifestly to be '*utrum — an*,' because the followers of Æneas were *doubtful* whether their friends were alive or dead, and required *definite information* on the subject.

(b) "*Utrum pastorem vidisset an arva colentem*" (Ovid) =
Whether she saw a shepherd *or* tiller of the field (her sole cry was 'Where is my daughter?')

Here again '*utrum — an*' ought manifestly to be '*seu — seu*,' because Ceres *did* see *one*, if not *both* of the two, a shepherd or tiller of the field, and there was no *doubt* about it.

3. The pupil must be careful not to confuse '*seu*' with '*ceu* = as.'

Ceu fumus in auras = *As* smoke into the air.

H.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Ut} \\ \text{Quo} \end{array} \left\{ \right. = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in order that, so that, as, \&c.} \\ \text{in order that (with comp.)} \end{array} \right.$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Ut non} \\ \text{Ne} \end{array} \left\{ \right. = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so that not,} \\ \text{in order that not, lest.} \end{array} \right.$$

1. *Ut* should always be followed by the *subjunctive* when it means 'that;' with the *Indicative* it means 'as,' 'when,' 'how.'

When I saw, how perished I! = *Ut vidi, ut perii!*

2. 'Ut' with the *subjunctive* means 'in order that' (purpose) or 'so that' (consequence); with the former the *subjunctive* is also used in English, so that there is no difficulty: but with the latter, the *Indicative* is used in English, which the pupil must be careful to put in the *subjunctive* in Latin.

I live well that I *may be* happy = *Bene vivo ut beatus sim.*

I live so well that I *am* happy = *Tam bene vivo ut beatus sim.*

N.B. 'Ut,' with *subjunctive*, may *sometimes* be translated by 'how.'

e.g. *Denarrat ut ingens Bellua cognatos eliserit* =
He relates *how* a monster has *crushed* his brothers.

3. Note that when there is a *comparative* in a clause meaning a *purpose*, 'quo' should be used instead of 'ut.'

He fortified the city *that* it might be (*the*) *safer* =
Urbem munivit quo tutior esset.

4. When there is a negative in either of the second clauses, *ne*, &c., should always be used to express a *purpose*, *ut non*, &c., a *consequence*. As mistakes are often made about this, it may be as well to draw out a table containing these words to show the difference:

<i>Purpose.</i>		<i>Consequence.</i>
Ne	= that not	= ut non
Ne quis	= that no one	= ut nemo
Ne quid	= that nothing	= ut nihil
Ne ullus	= that no, &c.	= ut nullus
Ne unquam	= that never	= ut nunquam.

(a) The king commanded *that no one* should come to him
(purpose) =

Rex imperavit ne quis ad se veniret.

(b) So great was their hatred, *that no one* came to him (consequence) =

Tantum erat odium *ut nemo* ad eum veniret.

(c) The consul ordered *that* the people should *never* eat bread (purpose) =

Consul imperavit *ne unquam* populus panem ederet.

(d) So great was the famine *that* the people *never* eat bread (consequence) =

Tanta erat fames *ut nunquam* populus panem ederet.

5. The young pupil must be carefully warned against rendering 'as' and 'as not' with the present Infinitive by that in Latin. They must be always translated by *ut* with the *subjunctive*.

e.g. He was so cowardly *as to run away* =

Tam ignavus erat, *ut aufugeret*.

He was so foolish *as not to escape* =

Tam stultus erat *ut non evaderet*.

But He was *not* so foolish *as not to*, &c. =

Tam stultus *non* erat *quin* evaderet.

6. 'Ut' and 'ne' must be used for 'that' after verbs of *fearing* with this difference: 'ne' means *will*, and 'ut' or 'ne non' means 'will *not*.'

I fear he *will* come = Vereor *ne* veniat.

I fear he *will not* come = Vereor *ut* (or *ne non*) veniat.

7. 'Ne' may also be used after verbs of *hindering*, though it is not so commonly found in this construction as 'quin' or 'quominus'.

I will prevent him from coming = Impediam *ne* veniat.

8. Ne = do not
 Neu — neve = and do not (nor) } in prohibitions.

In strict Latin Prose the above words should be used with the 2nd persons, singular and plural, of the *perfect subjunctive*, 'ne' with present imperative being confined to *poetry*.

e.g. Do not blame the boy = *Ne puerum culpaveris.*

The explanation of the above usage would seem to be that 'cave = beware' is understood before 'ne:'

(Beware) lest you *have blamed* the boy,
to avoid too *direct* or *harsh* a prohibition,

9. Those who are engaged in teaching young pupils will doubtless have found that when they are asked the meaning of 'ne,' the answer very often given is 'not.'

They should, therefore, be told that 'ne' does *not* mean 'not,' but 'that not,' 'lest,' or 'do not,' unless it is used with *quidem*, when the two together mean 'not even.'

Of course, sometimes in English we put 'not' after the Imperative instead of 'do not' before it; it will *then* be translated by 'ne,' with perfect subjunctive.

Love *not* the bad, nor punish the good =
Ne malos amaveris, neu bonos puniveris.

I.

'THAT.'

1. As there are many different ways of rendering the above word into Latin, and pupils are often at a loss which way to choose, the following table may be found to help them in their difficulty.

(a) After verbs of

Saying
Knowing
Hearing
Feeling
Perceiving
Thinking
Understanding
It is certain
It is plain

'that'
should be rendered
into Latin by
Accusative and Infinitive
(vide Cap. VII).

- (b) I do *not* doubt } quin c. subjunctive.
 I do *not* deny }

N.B. I doubt whether = dubito *an*.

I deny that = nego (acc. c. infi.)

Negat se stultum esse = he says he is not a fool (Lit. he denies that he is).

- (c) How comes it? }
 It follows } ut with subjunctive.
 It happens }
 It remains }
 The next thing is }

- (d) I fear that { Timeo } ne
 I fear that not { } ut (or ne non).

- (e) In order that } ut with subjunctive.
 So that }

(f) Demonstrative = is, iste, ille.

(g) Relative = qui, quae, quod.

2. As there may still be some difficulty in applying the various uses contained in the above table, we will append the following sentence, which, though perhaps not particularly brilliant, may serve to exemplify them.

There is no doubt *that* it happens *that* a report came *that* night *that* Caesar on the day *that* he was shipwrecked *showed* such courage *that* he swam to shore =

Non est dubium *quin* accidat *ut* nuntiatum sit *illâ* nocte *Caesarem*, *quo* die naufragus esset, tantum fortitudinis *adhibuisse*, *ut* ad oram nataret.

That = *the fact that*.

3. The above may be rendered by 'quod' with *indicative*, and the clause be considered as a *subject*, or direct or indirect *object* of a verb.

e.g. (a) It pleases me *that you are come* =
Quod vēnisti mihi placet (subj.).

(b) I rejoice *that you are come* =
Gaudeo quod venisti (dir. obj.).

(c) I congratulate you *on your victory* =
Gratulor tibi quod vicisti (ind. obj.).
 Lit. *That you have conquered.*

4. Of course, the first meaning of 'quod' (and 'quia') is 'because'; when it means this, 'quod' takes the *indicative* of a reality, *subjunctive* of a supposition.

e.g. (a) I blame you *for having said so* (really) =
Te culpo quod ita dixisti.

(b) I blame you *for having said so* (as I think) =
Te culpo quod ita dixeris.

CHAPTER XVII.

INTERJECTIONS.

1. There is not much to notice in connection with the above parts of speech, but we may as well call attention to one or two little peculiarities.

2. En and Ecce! = behold!

The above interjections are found with both nominative and accusative.

Behold me, your Ascanius! = En ego vester Ascanius!
See four altars! = En quattuor aras!

3. Pro and proh! = forbid it!

These also are found with both nominative and accusative.

Forbid it, shame! = Proh pudor!
By faith of gods and men! =
Pro deum atque hominum fidem!

4. Hei and vae! = alas!

These two interjections are followed by a *dative*.

Woe is me! = Hei mihi!
Ah hapless me! = Vae misero mihi!

5. Be careful not to confuse the following:

(a) Heu! = alas!
(b) Heus! = hallo!

6. Note also

(O) me miserum! = O wretched man that I am!

CHAPTER XVIII.

PECULIARITIES OF CASES.

A.

NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE.

1. As there is not much to be said about the vocative, we may as well take the above two cases together.

2. It should be carefully noticed that a nominative should never be used except as a nominative *to a verb*, expressed or understood. By this means such a mistake as the following will often be avoided.

The same day ambassadors came =
Eodem die legati venerunt.

Not 'idem dies,' which would have to have some verb after it.

3. 'The same day' means 'on the same day,' and is *ablative of point of time*, which will be explained in the next chapter.

4. In such an expression as 'En Priamus = Lo Priam!' though 'Priamus' *seems* to stand alone, it is really nominative to some such verb as 'adest' understood.

Lo! Priam (is present).

5. When the verb 'to be' connects an adjective or participle to more than one noun before it, the adjective or participle should be put in the *plural*; and if the nouns are the names of *living* persons, the adjective or participle should take the gender of the more important.

e.g. The king and queen are dead =

Rex et regina *mortui* sunt,

masculine being more important than feminine, in *grammar* at least.

6. If the nouns are the names of *lifeless* things, the adjective, &c., may be neuter.

Seeing and hearing are *useful* =

Visus et auditus sunt *utilia*.

7. In such an expression as the well-known one,

Triste lupus stabulis,

the adjective is put in the *neuter* gender, though referring to the *living* noun 'wolf,' which is *masculine*.

The wolf is a bane (lit. a sad *thing*) to the sheepfolds.

8. In the case of what is known as a *composite* subject, *i.e.* where the same verb has *more than one* subject, the verb should, as a rule, be put in the *plural* number.

e.g. Cæsar and Pompey were slain =

Cæsar et Pompeius *interfecti* sunt.

Should, however, the subjects be of *different persons*, if there is a *first* person among the subjects, the verb should be *first* person plural; if a *second*, and no first, in the second person plural.

e.g. You and I are well = Ego et tu *valemus*,

You and Balbus are well = Tu et Balbus *valetis*.

9. But when the subjects are separated by 'neque — neque' = 'neither — nor,' or 'aut — aut' = 'either — or,' the verb takes the number and person of the *last*; and note that, in Latin, the *first* person precedes the second, the *second* the third.

e.g. Neither you nor I saw the man = Neque ego neque tu hominem vidisti.

10. Personal pronouns, as *subjects*, are not expressed in Latin unless they are *emphatic* or *contrasted*.

e.g. I laugh, *you* weep = *Ego* rideo, *tu* fles.
But, I am laughing, not weeping = Rideo, non fleo.

11. Note the following curious use of the *nominative* with the verb *audio* = I hear.

You heard yourself called *king and father* =
Rexque paterque audisti coram.

12. A *vocative* is sometimes used after the verb 'sum,' where a *nominative* would rather be expected; as in the following expression.

Go on in your valour! =
Macte virtute esto!

(or plural) *Macti* virtute estote!

Where *macte* and *macti* are the vocatives of the word *mactus* = *mactatus*.

Lit. Be *increased* in valour!

B.

ACCUSATIVE.

1. We may divide the accusative into the five following classes:

- (a) Direct object.
- (b) Cognate.
- (c) Factitive.
- (d) Double.
- (e) Respect, limitation, part affected.

(a) The *first* use of the *Accusative* is that of *direct object* to a transitive verb, known also as a 'quid-verb.'

e.g. The boy loves *the girl* = *Puer* puellam amat.

(b) Certain *intransitive* verbs, though not capable of governing a *direct* object, take after them a *cognate* accusative, or accu-

salive of *kindred meaning*, i.e. belong, as it were, to the same *family* of words.

e.g. Caius is playing *dice* = Caius *aleam* ludit.

'Dice' is a *game* you *play*, and is what is known in English Grammar as a *correlative* object.

If you say 'Caius *throws* the dice = Caius *aleas* jactat,' 'aleas' is an ordinary direct object, because Caius *acts on* the dice *themselves*, but he does not on dice as a *game*.

So it is with such expressions as 'To walk a *mile*,' 'live a *life*,' &c.

(c) Verbs of 'making,' 'calling,' and 'thinking' sometimes take a *second object* after the first; and this is known as a *factitive* object, from factus = made, as the verb 'to make' is a type of the class.

e.g. (a) They made Fabius *dictator* =
Fabium *dictatorem* creaverunt.

(b) They called Socrates *wise* =
Socratem *sapientem* vocaverunt.

(c) I consider you a fool =
Te *stultum* puto.

(d) Verbs of 'asking,' 'teaching,' and 'concealing' also require *two* accusatives sometimes; one of the *person*, another of the *thing*; and the pupil should carefully notice that after a verb of *asking*, no matter *what* preposition is used in English, *both* words must be *accusative* in Latin.

(a) I asked Caius *for money*, or I asked *money of Caius* =
Caium *pecuniam* rogavi.

(b) I taught you *Latin* = Te *Latinam linguam* docui.

Also after a verb of *concealing* the English Preposition 'from' is a sign of the *accusative* case.

(c) Do not conceal your faults *from your father* =
Ne *patrem tuum* culpas celaveris.

(e) Sometimes an accusative follows an *intransitive* verb or an adjective, and seems at first to have no government at all. An accusative of this kind is called either the accusative of (a) Respect, (b) Limitation, (c) or Part affected.

e.g. *Nuda pedes* = bare footed.

i.e. Bare *as regards* the feet, 'pedes' being the accusative of respect, or limitation, or the part affected.

This accusative is also found with *passive* verbs.

e.g. *Exutur cornua* = She puts off her horns.

Lit. She is put off *as regards* her horns.

2. The accusative of 'motion,' 'time,' and 'space' will be explained in the next chapter.

C.

GENITIVE.

1. We may broadly divide Latin *genitives* into *five* classes, as follows:

(a) Subjective.

(b) Objective.

(c) Partitive.

(d) Greek, or genitive of respect.

(e) Genitive of price.

We will proceed to consider each separately.

(a) 1. The *subjective* genitive may be briefly described as the genitive of *possession*.

e.g. *Pueri liber* = *The boy's book*.

2. Sometimes the thing possessed is left out.

e.g. *Ventum erat ad Vestae* (templum) =

We had come to *Vesta's* (temple).

Just as we say to St. Paul's (Cathedral).

3. The words 'mark,' 'duty,' 'business,' of any one are generally omitted.

e.g. It is (*the mark*) of a wise man = *sapientis est*.

So, *anyone* can do that = *Cujusvis est id facere*.

Lit. It is of *anyone* you please to do it.

(b) 1. The *objective* genitive is the genitive of something proceeding *to* or *from*, *i.e.* *external* to the object.

e.g. *Ereptae virginis ira* =

Anger at the seizure of the maid.

Lit. of (*i.e.* proceeding *to*) the seized maid.

Vulnere tardus Ulixei = Limping through the wound of (*i.e.* proceeding *from*) *Ulysses*.

2. The *Genitive* may often be rendered in Latin by an adjective in agreement with the noun, as will be seen from the following examples :

(a) The labours of (*i.e.* endured by) *Hercules* = *Herculei labores*.

(b) The offspring of (*i.e.* produced by) *Neptune* = *Neptunia proles*.

(c) The top of the mountain = *Mons summus*.

Lit. The topmost mountain.

(d) The middle of the plain = *Medius campus*.

Lit. The middle plain.

(e) The bottom of the river = *Imus fluvius*.

Lit. The lowest river.

(f) Note also the following idiom :

Three hundred of us came = *Trecenti venimus*.

Lit. We three hundred came.

(g) And Horace's expression

Non omnis moriar = I shall not altogether die,
or The whole of me will not perish

(b) 1. The *Partitive* genitive signifies the whole from which the part is taken; and notice that the word on which the partitive depends takes the *gender* of the partitive.

e.g. Jupiter is *the greatest of the gods* =
 Jupiter est *maximus deorum*.
 Rome is *the greatest of cities* =
 Roma est *maxima urbium*.

2. When an adjective of *quantity* goes with a noun, it is more elegant to put the noun in the *genitive*, and the adjective in the *neuter* gender, than to make them agree.

e.g. I derive *much pleasure* from it =
 Percipio *multum voluptatis* ex eo.
Whatever territory they possessed =
 Quodcunque possederunt *agri*,

instead of 'multam voluptatem,' 'quencunque agrum.' The genitive is often at some distance from the word on which it depends, and therefore must be carefully looked for.

3. Peritus = skilled in } require the *genitive* after them.
 Imperitus = unskilled in }

e.g. Artium peritus = skilled in the arts.

4. Note the following idioms in connexion with the partitive genitive:

[a] Where *on earth* are you? = Ubi *terrarum* es?

[b] Where *in the world* are we? = Ubi *gentium* sumus?

[c] To such a pitch *of boldness* = Eo *audaciae*.

[d] This word *pleasure* = Haec vox *voluptatis*.

[e] Tunc temporis = at that time.

[f] Id aetatis = of that age.

(d) The *Greek* genitive, or that of *respect*.

e.g. I am tormented *in (respect of) mind* = Angor *animi*.

(e) The following are *genitives of price*:

Tanti	= at <i>so great</i> a price	} at <i>as great</i> a price as
Quanti?	= at <i>how great</i> a price	
Magni	= at a <i>high</i> price	
Parvi	= at a <i>low</i> price	
Pluris	= at a <i>higher</i> price	
Minoris	= at a <i>lower</i> price	
Maximi	= at a <i>very high</i> price	
Minimi	= at a <i>very low</i> price	
Flocci	= at a <i>straw</i>	
Nauci	= at a <i>nutshell</i>	
Nihili	= at <i>nothing</i>	
Pili	= at a <i>hair</i>	
Assis	= at a <i>penny</i>	
Hujus	= at <i>this</i>	

(Te *hujus* facio = I don't care *that* for you)

Teruncii = at twopence.

For verbs governing genitive see appendix K.

D.

DATIVE.

1. The Dative in Latin may, for convenience, be divided into *six* classes, as follows:

- (a) Direct object.
- (b) Indirect object.
- (c) Advantage and disadvantage.
- (d) Ethic or personal reference.
- (e) Agent.
- (f) Possessor.

We will proceed to consider each of these separately.

(a) Some verbs, a list of which is given in Appendix I, govern a dative of the *direct object*; these are known as 'cui-verbs.' Some adjectives also, which in English are followed by the verb 'to,' take a dative; such as 'fit,' 'friendly,' 'kind,' 'like,' 'near,' 'obedient.'

Note that *similis* (like) with

genitive = like in *character*, *dative* = like in *appearance*.

Nero was like *a wolf* (in character) =

Nero erat *similis lupi* (gen.).

A dog is like a wolf (in appearance) =

Canis est *similis lupo* (dat.).

(b) The dative is more commonly used for the *indirect object*; i.e. the person *to whom* a thing is given, or *for whom* a thing is done; and the pupil must notice that though, in English, the preposition 'to' is sometimes left out before the indirect object, that must still be *dative* in Latin.

I return *you* the book which you gave *me* =

Reddo *tibi* librum, quem *mihi* dedisti.

Te and *me* would mean *you* and *I* were returned and given.

Such verbs as the above are called 'cui-quid' verbs.

(c) The dative of *advantage* or *disadvantage* may be used elegantly after the verb 'to be,' whenever the words 'source of' might be put in.

(1) These things are a (*source of*) *pleasure* to me =

Haec mihi sunt *voluptati*.

Lit. These things are *for* a pleasure to me.

(2) The greedy sea is a (*source of*) *destruction* to sailors =

Exitio (dat.) est avidum mare nautis.

Lit. Is *for* a destruction to sailors.

(d) The *Ethic* dative is a sort of dative of personal reference; these are the best examples of it.

Quid *mihi* Celsus agit? = *Pray*, what is Celsus doing?

Sum *tibi* Mercurius = I am Mercury, *you must know*.

(e) The dative of the *agent* is, as we have shown in Cap. XI. 16, used with the gerundive; as

I must walk = *Mihi* ambulandum est.

It is also used after passive participles, and adjectives in -bilis; but chiefly in *poetry*.

e.g. Feared by *Otho* = Formidatus *Othoni*.

Wept by many good (men) = *Multis* flebilis *bonis* (dat.).

(f) The dative of the *possessor* is the dative of the pronoun used with 'sum,' instead of habeo (I have).

e.g. *I have* a little house = *Est mihi* parva domus.

Note the *attraction* in

Whose name was Ducarius = *Cui* nomen erat *Ducario*.

2. We have mentioned the terms 'quid-verbs,' 'cui-verbs,' and 'cui-quid-verbs.' We will now proceed to a further explanation of them.

(a) 'Quid-verbs' are those which govern an *accusative* of the direct object; these are also called *transitive* verbs.

N.B. 'Quid' stands for *aliquid* = something, and is accusative.

(b) 'Cui-verbs' are those which govern a *dative* of the direct object; these are also called *trajective* verbs.

N.B. 'Cui' stands for *alicui* = something.

(c) 'Cui-quid-verbs' are those which govern an *accusative* of the direct and a *dative* of the indirect object; known also as 'trajective-transitive' verbs.

For verbs governing Dative see Appendix I.

E.

ABLATIVE.

1. The four signs of the *ablative* are 'by,' 'with,' 'from,' 'in.' As young pupils are often at a loss when to translate these by the corresponding Latin prepositions, and when not, the following rules may be helpful. *Always translate:*

(a) 'By,' unless the action is done by a *thing*,

The city was taken *by* Caesar = *Urbs a* Caesare capta est;
but—The city was taken *by fraud* = *Urbs fraude* capta est.

(b) 'With,' unless it means *instrument*.

I went a walk *with* Balbus = *Cum* Balbo ambulavi;
but—I beat him *with a stick* = *Eum baculo* pulsavi.

(c) 'From,' unless it comes before the name of a town, small island, domus, or rus.

I set out *from* the city = *Ab urbe proficiscor* :
but—We come *from* Troy = *Trojā venimus*.

(d) 'In,' unless it means *point of time*.

He lives *in* the garden = *In horto vivit*
but—Heat is troublesome *in summer* =
Calor aestate molestus est.

Translate.

By (a living agent).
With (a person) or, (attend-
ant circumstances.)
From (a person, or common
noun).
In (a place).

Don't translate.

By (a thing).
With (an instrument).
From (a town or small island).
In (of time)

2. The first notion of the *ablative* is 'taking away from'; but the *dative* is sometimes found with this meaning :

What misfortune took thee *from me* ? =
Quis te mihi casus ademit ?

where *mihi* seems a dative of disadvantage.

3. The word 'of' is often used in English after a verb of 'robbing,' 'defrauding,' and 'depriving.' The word before which it comes in English must always be translated by the *ablative* in Latin.

(a) Do not rob me *of pleasure* = *Ne me voluptate spoliaveris*.

(b) You defraud me *of money* = *Me pecuniā fraudas*.

(c) The king deprived himself *of one eye* = *Rex se uno oculo privavit*.

N.B. 'Egeo,' need, and 'careo,' am without, always take an *ablative*.

See also Appendix O : and for verbs governing *Ablative*,
Appendix J.

4. There are *twelve* different uses of the ablative ; we give them below, with an instance of each :

- (a) *Agent* ; *ab his et ab illis* = *by these and those*.
- (b) *Cause* ; *virtutis amore* = *from love of virtue*.
- (c) *Comparison* ; *vilius auro* = *cheaper than gold*.
- (d) *Condition* ; *pace tuā* = *by your leave*.
- (e) *Instrument* ; *saxis et jaculis* = *with stones and javelins*.
- (f) *Manner* ; *duobus modis* = *in two ways*.
- (g) *Matter* ; *cibus lacte constat* = *food consists of milk*.
- (h) *Place* ; *Viā Sacrā* = *on the Sacred Road*.
- (i) *Price* ; *pretio* = *at a cost*.
- (j) *Quality* ; *præstanti corpore* = *of lovely form*.
- (k) *Respect* ; *ingenio maximus* = *mighty in wit*.
- (l) *Time* ; *æstate, hieme* = *in summer, in winter*.

5. Note that *dignus* (worthy), *indignus* (unworthy) are better followed by the *ablative* than genitive.

Of what punishment is he worthy ? = *Quā poenā dignus est ?*

The *genitive* may, of course, be used, but this is chiefly found in poetry.

e.g. Unworthy of his great ancestors =
Magnorum indignus avorum.

6. 'Opus' and 'usus' also require an *ablative*. *Nunc animis opus, Aenea, nunc viribus usus* = Now there is need of courage, Aeneas, now a time for strength.

7. Note that after $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{amplius} \\ \text{plus} \end{array} \right\}$ = 'more,' and 'minus = less,' the word 'quam = than' is often omitted, without the word compared being put in the *ablative* :

e.g. There are more than six months =
Amplius sunt sex menses.

8. There is a curious use of the ablative, which we may call the 'Ablative of measurement.' It is used before comparatives. In English the sign 'by' is left out.

e.g. Quanto	= how much	} major = greater.
Tanto	= so much	
Multo	= much	
Aliquanto	= somewhat	

9. Here we may again mention the Latin for '*the*'—'*the*' before two comparatives.

The shorter it is, *the* better it is.

<i>Quo</i>	} brevius est	<i>eo</i>	} melius est.
<i>Quanto</i>		<i>tanto</i>	

10. The ablative of 'time' and 'place' will be explained in the next chapter.

CHAPTER XIX.

REST AT, MOTION TO AND FROM, DURATION, AND
POINT OF TIME, SPACE, &C.

A.

REST 'AT' A PLACE.

1. If the name of the place *at* which anyone stays is the name of a *town or small island*, a *singular* noun of the *first or second* declension is put in the *genitive* case.

e.g. Roma = Rome; Romae = *at* Rome.
Corinthus = Corinth; Corinthi = *at* Corinth.

2. But if the name be a *plural* noun of the *first or second* declension, and singular or plural of the *third*, it is put in the *ablative*.

e.g. Athenae = Athens; Athenis = *at* Athens
Gabii = Gabii; Gabiis = *at* Gabii
Carthago = Carthage; Carthagine = *at* Carthage
Sardes (pl.) = Sardis; Sardibus = *at* Sardis.

3. As this rule has often been found difficult to remember, we will give it again in a tabulated form.

Sing. nouns of	} <i>genitive</i>	{ Romae Corinthi.
Decl. I. and II.		
All plural nouns;	} <i>ablative</i>	{ Athenis Gabiis Carthagine Sardibus.
all nouns of		
Decl. III., whether		
sing. or plural		

4. Note that with the name of a country the preposition 'in' should be used.

We live *in* Italy = *In Italiā vivimus.*

B.

MOTION TO.

1. The name of a *town or small island* to which anyone goes should be put in the *accusative* without a preposition.

e.g. The Greeks set out *for Troy* = *Graeci Trojam profecti sunt.*

Latona fled *to Delos* = *Latona Delon perfugit.*

2. But with the names of a *country* 'in' should be used, and with a common noun, and names of persons, 'ad.'

e.g. *Æneas came to Italy* = *Æneas in Italiam venit.*

I arrived *at the city* = *Ad urbem perveni.*

He sent ambassadors *to Caesar* =

Ad Caesarem legatos misit.

Note that 'into' should always be translated by 'in' with *accusative*.

C.

MOTION FROM.

1. The name of a *town or small island* from which anyone goes should be put in the *ablative* without preposition.

e.g. I come *from Rome* = *Romā venio*

They departed *from Samos* = *Samo abierunt.*

2. But with names of *countries* and with *common* nouns and names of persons 'a' or 'ab' should be used.

e.g. We have come *from Italy* = *Ab Italiā venimus*

They have advanced *from the city* = *Ab urbe progressi sunt.*

Ambassadors came *from the king* = *Legati a rege venerunt.*

Note that 'out of' should always be translated by 'e' or 'ex.'

3. Note also that the three *common* nouns

militia = warfare, *rus* = country, *domus* = house

follow the rules for *proper* names with regard to *rest at*, and *motion to or from*.

- (a) militiae = *on* service.
 (b) rus = *to* the country, ruri *in* the country,
 rure = *from* the country.
 (c) domum = *home*, domi *at* home,
 domo = *from* home.
 (d) humi = *on* the ground.

D.

DURATION OF TIME.

1. The *length of time* anything lasts should be put in the *accusative* without a preposition, whether it has the preposition 'for' before it or not.

e.g. The battle lasted *the whole day* =
 Proelium totum diem duravit.
 I did it every day *for three years* =
 Quotidie tres annos id feci.

2. Note the following expressions :

Biduum = for two days, Triduum = for three days,
 Biennium = for two years,
 Triennium = for three years,
 Quinquennium = for five years,

and the expression

Seventy years old = Septuaginta annos natus.

Lit. Having been born seventy years.

E.

POINT OF TIME.

The time *at which* anything happens should be put in the *ablative* without a preposition, whether it has the preposition 'on' or 'at' before it or not.

e.g. The battle was fought *that day* =
 Illo die pugna commissa est.

2. Note that the word 'tempestas' is often used for 'tempus' in the sense of *time*.

e.g. At that time = Eā tempestate.

Note the expressions

From the time that = Ex quo,

Ever since = Ex quo primum.

F.

SPACE, &C.

1. The *space* at which one place is distant from another should be put in the *accusative* without a preposition, whether it has the preposition 'for' before it or not.

e.g. He pitched his camp *three miles* from that place =

Tria millia passum ab eo loco castra posuit.

He followed the enemy *for five miles* =

Quinque millia passuum hostes secutus est.

2. The *length*, *breadth*, &c., of anything should be put in the *accusative* without a preposition, and the adjective should agree with the *thing*.

e.g. The river was 200 *feet* broad =

Flumen erat *ducentos pedes* latum.

CHAPTER XX.

APPOSITION.

1. As we have been dealing with the different uses of the cases, we will here explain what is meant by 'apposition.'

2. We do not say a noun *agrees* with another noun, but that it is put in *apposition* to it; the following rule will, perhaps, explain what is meant by it.

3. When two nouns come together, and the second explains the first, the second is said to be in *apposition* to the first, and is put *in the same case*.

We will proceed to give a few instances of apposition; and note that the word in apposition should always be marked off by *commas*.

4. (a) *Cyrus, king of the Persians, is dead =*
Cyrus, rex Persarum, mortuus est.

(b) I admire *Rome, the mistress of the world =*
Romam, orbis dominam, admiror.

(c) I remember *Caius, my friend = Caii, amici mei, memini.*

(d) They spared *Caractacus, the leader of the barbarians =*
Caractaco, barbarorum duci, pepercerunt.

(e) We enjoy *learning, the source of pleasure =*
Doctrinâ, voluptatis fonte, fruimur.

5. Note: The city of Rome = *Urbs Roma*;
 The island of Crete = *Insula Creta*.

CHAPTER XXI.

SPECIAL LATIN NOUNS.

We may conveniently divide these nouns into *six* classes.

- (1) Nouns with singular and no plural.
- (2) Nouns with plural and no singular.
- (3) Nouns with different meanings in singular and plural.
- (4) Defective and indeclinable nouns.
- (5) Heterogeneous (of two genders).
- (6) Heteroclite (of two declensions).

We will proceed to give a few instances of each kind.

1. *Singular only.*

Argentum = silver;	Aurum = gold;
Humus = ground;	Justitia = justice;
Sanguis = blood;	Ver = spring-time.

2. *Plural only.*

arma = arms (weapons);	cunae = cradle;
epulae = feast;	liberi = children;
moenia = town-walls;	nugae = trifles.

3. *Different meanings in both.*

Sing.		Plur.
aedes = temple,		aedes = house,
castrum = fort,		castra = camp,
copia = plenty,		copiae = forces,
gratia = favour,		gratiae = thanks,
littera = a letter	(of the)	litterae = a letter
	(alphabet),	(by post)
ludus = play		ludi = games.

4. *Defective and indeclinable.*

We will take each of these separately, giving several instances of each.

(a) *Defective.*

Of these nouns no *nominative* is found, but only the *stem*; they all belong to decl. III.: we will give the cases wanting in the singular.

dap- = feast.	No nominative; all other cases.
frug- = fruit.	No nominative; all other cases.
op- = help.	No nominative or dative.
prec- = prayer.	No nominative or genitive.
vic- = change.	No nominative or dative.

All have full plural.

(b) *Indeclinable.*

Instar = likeness,	Mane = morning,
Fas and nefas = right and wrong.	

5. *Heterogeneous.*

These are words that have both a masculine and neuter plural.

carbasus = linen;	plural i and a
jocus = jest	do.
locus = place	do.
frenum = bit	do.
rastrum = harrow	do.

6. *Heteroclite.*

These are nouns that have a form belonging to two or more declensions.

cupressus = cypress	} decl. 2 and 4.
ficus = fig-tree	
laurus = laurel	
pinus = pine	
vespera and vesper;	decl. 1, 2, 3.
eventum and -us;	decl. 2 and 4.
plebs and plebes;	decl. 3 and 5.

CHAPTER XXII.

LATIN FEMININES.

Many nouns of decl. II. in -us have a corresponding feminine of decl. I. in -a; but some nouns have a *special* feminine.

<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
avus	= grandfather	= avia
caper	= he- goat	= capra and capella
caupo	= landlord	= cōpa
citharista	= harper	= citharistria
cliens	= client	= clienta
fīdīcen	= flute-player	= fidicina
gallus	= cock	= gallīna
gener	= son-in-law	= nurus (decl. 4)
leo	= lion	= lea or leaena
nepos	= grandson	= neptis
poeta	= poet	= poetria
puer	= boy	= puella
senex	= old man	= anus (decl. 4)
socer	= father-in-law	= socrus (decl. 4)
tībīcen	= lute-player	= tibicina
ultor	= avenger	= ultrix
victor	= conqueror	= victrix

Note the expression

victricia arma = victorious arms.

CHAPTER XXIII.

LATIN ENDINGS AND SUFFIXES.

Certain letters are sometimes put on to the stem of a word, or a word itself, to impart a certain meaning ; we purpose dealing with these separately in their relation to nouns, pronouns, and adjectives.

A.

NOUNS.

1. *Diminutives.*

The followings endings put on to a noun or stem denote a smaller thing of the same kind.

-ulus, -a, -um ;

Parma = shield : parmula = little shield.

-culus, -a, -um ;

Homo = a man ; homunculus = mannikin.

-ellus, -a, -um ;

Liber = a book ; libellus = a little book.

-olus, -a, -um ;

Filius = a son ; filiulus = a little son.

2. *Patronymics.*

The following endings put on to the stem of a proper noun denotes son, daughter, or descendant of the person.

-ades and -as ;

Thestiades = son	} of Thestius.
Thestias = daughter	

-īdes and -is ;

Tyndarīdes = son	} of Tyndarus.
Tyndaris = daughter	

-ides and -eis ;

Nelides	= son	} of Neleus.
Neleis	= daughter	

Note that Hercules was often called 'Alcides,' and Achilles 'Æacides,' though they were not *sons* but *descendants* of Alcaeus and Æacus.

B.

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives with certain endings have certain meanings, as in the case of the following :

1. -ulus } = smallness ; as { parvulus = tiny
-ellus } { misellus = poor little
2. -ax } inclination { rapax = rapacious
-ix } = or ; as { felix = happy
-ox } intensity { velox = swift.
3. -idus = active force ; as validus = strong.
4. -ilis = capability ; as fertilis = fertile.
5. -bundus } = fulness ; as { concionabundus =
-cundus } { full of harangues
{ jucundus = full of
joy
6. -bilis = possibility.

Adjectives with this ending can be used both in an *active* and a *passive* sense, even in the case of the same word, as will be seen from the following instances :

- (a) Nulli *penetrabilis* astro Lucus iners =
A dull grove, that *can be penetrated* by no star.
- (b) *Penetrabilis* imber = The *penetrating* rain,
i.e. that *can penetrate*.

C.

PRONOUNS.

The following suffixes are added to certain Pronouns in order to strengthen them ; they are used as follows :

1. -met is added to

(a) *Ego* and its cases (except Gen. Plur.).

(b) The oblique cases of *tu* (but not 'tu' itself).

(c) *Se* and its cases (except Genitive).

(d) All the cases of *suus*.

(a) *Memet* = mine own self ; sometimes 'ipse' is added to strengthen the word still further : *memet ipsum* = my very own self.

(b) *Vosmet* = you yourselves.

(c) *Semet* = his own self.

(d) *Suamet* = his very own.

2. -te is added to

Tu, as *tute* (and *tutemet*) = thine own self.

3. -pte is added to

The ablative singular of the *Possessive* Pronouns,
suapte natura = of its own nature.

4. -ce is added to

The *Demonstrative* Pronouns.

hisce rebus = by these very things.

Note that 'illece' = illic — illaec -- illuc.

Acc. illunc — illanc — illuc.

Gen. illiusce, &c.

And so 'istece' = istic, &c.

5. We may here notice a curious use of the genitive of *ipse* = self, with the Possessives *meus*, *tuus*, &c.

Meâ ipsius manu = With my very own hand

Lit. with my hand of self.

6. For suffixes as applied to *verbs* see Cap. V. G. 6, 7, 8.

CHAPTER XXIV.

NOTES ON MOODS AND TENSES.

A.

MOODS.

1. Those who have got as far with young pupils as the translation of a *continuous narrative* into Latin may have noticed their evident reluctance to use the *subjunctive* mood.

2. The following rules may, therefore, be found useful in determining what *moods* the different verbs of a *complex sentence* should be put in; and first of all we will proceed to define clearly what a *complex* sentence is.

3. A *complex sentence* is one which, while it has only one *principal* subject and predicate, has one, two, or three others *subordinate* to the principal.

4. A *full* complex sentence, therefore, consists of the four following clauses:

(a) *Principal*—known by being able to make complete sense when taken by itself.

(b) *Noun*—stands for 'subject' or 'object'; generally is introduced by 'that.'

(c) *Adjective*—stands for an 'attribute,' and introduced by 'who' or 'which.'

(d) *Adverbial*—introduced by *conjunction*.

5. It being necessary to give young pupils very plain and straightforward rules, the following may perhaps help them to know what moods to use in the various clauses:

(a) *Principal*—use *Indicative*, unless the verb has the *sign* of the subjunctive before it.

(b) *Noun*—when introduced by ‘that,’ *accusative with infinitive*. See Chapter VII.

(c) *Adjective, i.e.* those introduced by relatives—*indicative*.

(d) *All adverbial clauses* and all *noun clauses*, not introduced by ‘that,’ should be *Subjunctive*.

6. Now, of course, it is quite plain that the above rules will not apply in *every* case; but seeing that pupils are so unwilling to use the *subjunctive* mood *at all*, and that the subjunctive for the indicative is sometimes a *less mistake* than the indicative for the subjunctive, it may be as well *at first* to let them put *all* adverbial clauses in the subjunctive, and *gradually* to point out to them when the *Indicative* would be more suitable; this, however, is as the teacher himself thinks fit.

7. The various uses of the *Infinitive* mood have been explained above, in Chapter VI.

B.

TENSES.

1. *Present*.

The pupil should carefully consider whether ‘is,’ in the Passive Voice is a sign of the *Present* or *Perfect* tense.

(a) If it means an action going on at the *present* time, it should be translated by the *present*.

e.g. The world *is ruled* by God =
Mundus a Deo *regitur*.

Because the action of ruling is going on at the present time.

(b) But if it means an action completed and done with, it should be translated by the *perfect*.

e.g. Troy *is taken* = Troja *expugnata est*.

2. *Imperfect*.

(a) The same remarks apply to the sign ‘was.’ If it means ‘was *being*,’ and implies a *continued* or *repeated* action, or, as the

name of the tense implies, an *uncompleted* one, it should be rendered by the *imperfect*.

e.g. The levy *was being held* = *Delectus habebatur*.

(b) But if 'was' means a *completed* action, it should be rendered by the perfect.

e.g. *Cæsar was slain* by Brutus =

Cæsar a Bruto interfectus est.

Note that 'interficiebatur' would mean that Cæsar was *being* slain by Brutus, and someone came up and prevented Brutus doing it.

(c) We may here notice a peculiar use of the Imperfect, known as the 'Epistolary Imperfect,' where the man who is writing a letter to a friend will describe his action in the *past* tense, because, when the letter reaches his friend, the action will be past as far as the friend is concerned.

e.g. Cicero, writing to Atticus, or one of his friends, might say

Ad te scribebam, instead of *scribo*.

Because, when Atticus *received* the letter, the action of writing would be *past and gone*.

3. Great care should be taken to notice that in English we do not repeat the auxiliary before *every* verb in a sentence. For instance, in the following,

You were running, not walking,

pupils are apt to translate 'walking' by 'ambulans,' forgetting that it means '*you were* not walking,' and should be

Currebas, non *ambulabas*.

4. We may here fitly observe :

"*Avoid the nominative of the present participle.*"

This has been already partly explained in the chapter on "Ablative Absolute," Cap. IX. 12 and 13. Note again that the present participle should not be used unless its action goes on *at the same time* as that of the principle verb.

5. Avoid also the *perfect subjunctive* ; and note that when we say this we do not mean that they are *not* to be used *at all*, but

that pupils should be *careful* in the use of them—as in that of ‘suus’ in the nominative case (Cap. IV. B. 3)—because they are often *wrongly* used.

6. The Latin language has the same form for the perfect with and without ‘have.’

e.g. ‘Vēnit’ means both ‘he *has* come,’ and ‘he *came*.’

The pupil must, therefore, look at the verb in the next clause, where there is one, to see the *exact* meaning of the perfect.

The two following sentences will serve to illustrate our meaning :

(a) He *has* come to see the games = Vēnit ut ludos *spectet*.

Because ‘has come’ is a *principal* tense, and requires a *present* subjunctive after it.

(b) He *came* to see the games = Vēnit ut ludos *spectaret*.

Because ‘came’ is a *historic* tense, and requires after it an *imperfect* subjunctive.

7. So with the *perfect subjunctive*, when the Latin idiom requires that an English verb in the *Indicative* should be rendered by a Latin one in the *subjunctive*, and the English verb is a past tense, it should be rendered by the *Imperfect* subjunctive, not *perfect*, unless it has the sign ‘has.’

e.g. He *was* such a coward that he *ran* away =
Tam ignavus *erut*, ut *aufugeret*.

But—He *is* such a coward that he *has* run away =
Tam ignavus *est*, ut *aufugerit*.

See Rules for ‘Sequence of Tenses’ Cap. VI. 9 and 10.

8. When in a Latin author a *perfect* is found among several *present* tenses, the perfect should always be translated by ‘has,’ which is, therefore, sometimes known as the ‘present-perfect.’

e.g. Pyrrhus instat vi patriā, jamque *cavavit* fenestram =
Pyrrhus presses on with all his father’s might, and now
he *has hollowed out* a gap.

CHAPTER XXV.

LATIN QUESTIONS.

These may be divided into two classes, *direct and indirect*; which again may each be sub-divided into two classes, single and double; we propose dealing with each of them separately.

A.

SINGLE DIRECT.

1. There are *three* ways of asking a question :

- (a) For mere information.
- (b) Expecting the answer 'yes.'
- (c) Expecting the answer 'no.'

(a) In asking a question for mere information, *-nē* is put on to the first word of the sentence.

e.g. Caiusne scribit =

Is Caius writing? (I want to know.)

(b) When the answer 'yes' is expected, begin the sentence with '*nonne*,' *i.e.* when there is a 'not' in the English question, put '*non*' first word in the sentence, and put *-nē* on to it.

e.g. Nonne Caius scribit? = Is *not* Caius writing?

(I thought I told him to!)

(c) When the answer 'no' is expected, begin with '*num*.'

e.g. Num Caius scribit? = Is Caius writing? (No.)

(I thought I told him not to!)

In a question expecting 'no,' and expressing great surprise, '*an*' may be used instead of '*num*.'

e.g. An quisquam hoc fecit? = Has anyone done so? (No.)

(Surely no one has been so foolish.)

B.

SINGLE INDIRECT.

1. *Indirect* questions are those which are not asked *directly*, but depend on some verb or word of 'asking,' 'doubting,' &c. Note that the verb in such a question must *always* be *subjunctive*, whether the question is single or double.

2. As pupils very often forget this *very* important point, we will give an instance of a direct and indirect question, the same question being asked directly and indirectly.

(a) What *is* in the cart? (direct) =
Quid *est* in plaustro? (indicative).

(b) He asked what *was* in the cart (indirect) = Rogavit quid *esset* in plaustro (subjunctive).

Note that 'erat' would be a *very* bad mistake.

3. 'Whether' in a *single indirect* question should be translated by 'num.'

e.g. I will ask *whether* Caius has come =
Rogabo *num* Caius venerit.

4. Note, however, the phrases

(a) Dubito } $an = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I doubt} \\ \text{I don't know} \end{array} \right\} \textit{whether.}$
 (b) Haud scio

(a) I doubt whether he will come =
Dubito an venturus sit.

Note that the future in a dependent clause is 'periphrastic,' *i.e.* made up of the future participle and the subjunctive of the verb 'sum.'

5 With 'haud scio an' = 'I don't know whether,' &c., if there is a 'not' in English, *leave it out* in Latin, if there is *not*, *put it in*. Also translate *anyone* by 'nemo,' *any* by 'nullus,' *anything* by 'nihil.'

The following instances may serve to explain this curious use :

- (a) I do not know whether it is *not* so =
Haud scio an *ita* sit.
- (b) I do not know whether he *has come* =
Haud scio an *non venerit*.
- (c) I do not know whether *anyone* is braver =
Haud scio an *nemo* sit fortior.

N.B. *Any* writer = *nemo* scriptor.

- (d) I do not know whether there is *any* greater folly =
Haud scio an *nulla* major sit stultitia.
- (e) I do not know whether *anything* is more foolish =
Haud scio an *nihil* sit stultius.

C.

DOUBLE DIRECT.

1. The ordinary way of asking a double direct question is by 'utrum — an' = 'whether — or.'

e.g. *Utrum* vinum *an* aquam bibis? =

(Whether) do you drink wine *or* water?

2. The pupil should be careful in all *double direct* questions, *i.e.* questions asking which one of two things is true, and therefore having 'or' in the middle of them, to put the 'utrum' at the beginning, though 'whether' is not in the English, and to translate 'or' by 'an'—*not* 'aut' or 'vel.'

3. The 'whether' has dropped out in English now, though it is found in the following passage from the New Testament :

'*Whether* is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy "Thy sins be forgiven thee," or "Arise, take up thy bed, and walk?"'

4. 'Or not,' in a *double direct* question, should be rendered by 'annon.'

e.g. Will you go to Rome, *or not*? =

Utrum Romam ibis, *annon*?

D.

DOUBLE INDIRECT.

1. 'Whether — or' in a *double* indirect question may be translated in four ways:

(a) Utrum — an.

(b) -ně — an.

(c) -ně — ně.

(d) dropping the 'utrum' or '-ne' = 'whether,' and using only 'an' = 'or.'

e.g. 'I will ask whether he drinks wine or water' may be

$$\text{Rogabo} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{utrum vinum an aquam} \\ \text{vinum-ne an aquam} \\ \text{vinum-ne aquam-ne} \\ \text{vinum an aquam} \end{array} \right\} \text{bibat.}$$

2. 'Or not,' in a *double indirect* question, should be translated by 'necne.'

e.g. I will ask whether he has come, *or not* =
Rogabo utrum venerit, *necne*.

This may also be rendered Rogabo *nonne* venerit.

3. Note that the verb in a *double indirect* question is always *subjunctive*.

CHAPTER XXVI.

REMARKS ON THE 'ORDER' OF WORDS IN A
LATIN SENTENCE.

1. When we begin to teach young pupils Latin we have to tell them *not* to put the words in the same *order* as in *English*. It is, therefore, necessary to give them some sort of guiding rule on the subject. The following may, perhaps, be found useful.

2. The main system on which the words in a Latin sentence are arranged is comprised in a nutshell; viz.

Dependent words first,

i.e. the word which is governed by or depends on another generally comes *before* it, whereas in *English* it comes *after* it. A word of *one* syllable should, however, come *first* in Latin.

e.g. The general of the enemy = *hostium imperator*;
but, The leader of the enemy = *dux hostium*.

3. Another point to be remembered in connection with a Latin sentence is that the *beginning and end* are the *strong parts*, and, therefore, the *strong words* should be put in those parts.

4. Consequently, in a Latin sentence which is *strictly* arranged, the conjunction and nominative should be put *at the beginning*, and the verb, as being *the chief* word of the sentence, *at the end*.

5. The young pupil should, therefore, before translating a sentence into Latin, read it over backwards way in English, except beginning with the conjunction and nominative.

e.g. 'When Caius had surrounded the head of the girl with a garland, he returned to Rome' should be read in the following order: 'When Caius with a garland of the girl the head had surrounded, to Rome he returned' = 'Quum Caius coronâ puellae caput cinxisset, Romam rediit.'

6. Note that the above remarks apply to *clauses* as well as sentences, and the pupil should be warned against jumbling up all his verbs at the end of the sentence; but should be told to keep the clauses *distinct*, with the words arranged as above, and *its own verb* at the end of *each clause*. There should never be only *one* comma between subject and predicate, or predicate and object, though there may be *more than one*.

7. The following *special* points in connection with the order of words in a Latin sentence should be carefully noticed;

(a) The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester* should always come *after* the noun with which they go, unless they are very emphatic, as in the following sentence:

'He said that not only *his own* safety, but the safety of the soldiers was very dear to him' =

'Dixit non *suam* modo salutem, sed militum sibi carissimam esse.'

(b) The demonstratives *hic, is, iste, ille* should generally come *before* the noun; *ipse* = -self, and *idem* = the same, may come before or after.

(c) An *adverb* should always be placed *before* the verb: such an expression as 'I am not' being 'non sum,' *not* 'sum non.' If the adverb is very *emphatic*, it may be placed after the verb, as in the following:

'I have planted a tree, the fruit of which I shall myself *never* behold' =

Sevi arborem, cujus fructum ipse adspiciam *nunquam*.'

This sentence, which has no *verb* at the *end*, shows that, *as a rule*, the *verb* should come there.

(d) In an *ablative absolute* the *noun* should stand *first*, the *participle last*, and any other words *in between* the two.

e.g. Having sprinkled the altar with the blood of victims =
Arā victimarum sanguine adpersā.

(e) The following is a list of words which should never stand *first* in a Latin sentence, but should always be put *second*:

autem = but	quidem = indeed
enim = for	quoque = also
igitur = therefore	vero = but, indeed.

Tamen = nevertheless, and its compounds 'attamen' and 'veruntamen,' *may* stand *first*, though 'tamen' is more usually found *second*.

(f) 'At' and 'sed' = but, 'nam' and 'namque' = for, 'ergo' = therefore, 'equidem' = indeed, 'etiam' = also, stand *first*; but note that 'etiam' generally come *before*, 'quoque' *after* the word it emphasizes.

CHAPTER XXVII.

RULES FOR TRANSLATING FROM LATIN INTO ENGLISH.

1. Look the whole piece through carefully first, to see if you can make out the *subject-matter* before you begin to translate it.

2. Then take each sentence down to a *semicolon, colon, or full stop*, unravelling it carefully in the following order :

(a) Conjunction, adverb, or ablative absolute.

(b) Noun or pronoun in the *nominative* case. Sometimes there is *not* one ; in which case the subject will be the pronoun contained in the verb, which should be taken *first*, or after the conjunction.

(c) Any adjective, pronoun, relative with its clause, or participle that *agrees with* the noun in the nominative, or genitive *depending on it*.

(d) Verb, which must be in the same number and person as the *nominative*, and will be often found at the end.

(e) If the verb be *transitive*, a noun or pronoun in the accusative case generally ; sometimes genitive, dative, or ablative : if it be *intransitive* and copulative, such as 'to be,' 'to become,' 'to turn out,' 'to seem,' the same case after it as before it.

(f) Adjective, pronoun, &c., agreeing with the object, as in (c).

Having got thus far, it will generally be found that the rest of the sentence will unravel itself. Pupils should have *some* system to go upon in translating, and the above may be found useful.

3. *Unflinching accuracy* should be observed in *voice, tense, person, number, case, gender*; in *mood* it cannot always be, because so often a Latin Subjunctive and Infinitive have to be rendered by an English Indicative; but, whenever you see a subjunctive or infinitive, *ask yourself the reason of it.*

4. 'Qui with the subjunctive,' except in Oratio Obliqua, should *not* be translated by 'who,' but signifies (*a*) purpose = in order to, (*b*) cause = seeing that. See Cap. IV. G. 4.

5. Conjunctions take *after* them the same *voice, &c.*, as *before* them, unless another rule steps in.

This requires explanation. When you come to a conjunction try and look for some verb of the same voice, mood, tense, person, and number as you had before it, or for some noun in the same case. Sometimes, however, conjunctions *do* couple different things, as

(*a*) At Rome and Athens =

Romae (gen. sing.) et Athenis (abl. pl.).

(*b*) So with verbs:

Troy would have come, and Greece be mourning =

Troja venisset (plupf. subj.) et Grecia lugeret (impf. subj.).

In (*a*) the rule for 'rest at' steps in; and in (*b*) a special meaning is required.

6. For the translation of the Relative Pronoun, see Cap. IV. F. 8, 9.

7. It will be found better not to put *any part* of a sentence down on paper until you have first made out the *complete* sense of it. There are two reasons for this: (1) Because the same word in Latin may often, as far as its form is concerned, be either subject or object; (2) Because it helps to prevent pupils from writing down *sheer nonsense*, which they too often do.

8. When the *literal* translation of a Latin passage makes *good* English, keep it in preference to any other. When the

literal translation is not *quite* good English, change it, but as *little* as you can, until it is.

9. When the same word in Latin is repeated twice in the same sentence, use *the same word* in English in both cases. But when you have the same idea represented by *two different words* in Latin, use *different* words in English.

10. If you see an *accusative* in a sentence, apparently without any government, and an adjective or participle in the same clause, the accusative is probably the *accusative of respect* (see Cap. XVIII. B. 5), as in the following line from Virgil : 'Sinus nodo collecta fluentes.'

'Collecta' is perfect participle *passive*, and means 'having *been* collected,' not 'having collected'; and 'sinus fluentes' is *accusative of respect*. Lit. 'collected (as to) her folds.'

"Her flowing folds collected in a knot."

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ROMAN TIME AND MONEY.

A.

TIME.

1. In every Roman month there are three leading days :
(a) The Kalends. (b) The Nones. (c) The Ides.

These three stood out, as it were, like *finger-posts* ; because, as we shall see, they pointed the days on, each to the one that came after it.

2. The *Kalends* were always the *first* day of every month. In Greece there were no such things as Kalends ; consequently, by *Greek Kalends* we mean *never*.

3. The *Nones*, in eight months of the year, were on the *fifth* day of the month, but in March, May, July, and October they were on the *seventh*.

N.B. 'Nones' comes from *nonus* = ninth, and so

4. The *Ides* were always *nine* days after the Nones, accordingly in eight months they were on the *thirteenth*, i.e. if we follow the reckoning given below in (6), which *includes* both the days *from* which and *to* which you count ; in the four months mentioned above they were on the *fifteenth*.

Note then : *Kalends*, always the *first* : *Nones*, *fifth*, or *seventh* ; *Ides*, *thirteenth* or *fifteenth*.

See also Appendix P.

6. We will now proceed to show how the Romans counted the days of the month by means of these three dates. They

counted *forward* to the one that was coming, reckoning in both the day on which they were, and the one of the three great date 'finger-posts' to which they were nearest.

e.g. Take the 3rd of October.

In October the Nones were on the 7th (3, 4, 5, 6, 7 = 5 days), so the 3rd of October was called the *fifth day before the Nones*; or, as the Romans said it, 'before the fifth day the Nones of October,' putting 'fifth day' after 'before,' and attracting it into the case of Nones.

e.g. October 3rd =

ante diem quintum Nonas Octobres :

written A.D. V. Non. Oct.

7. The same style or reckoning is applied to days between the Nones and Ides, which will, of course, be days *before the Ides*; but note that days *after* the Ides will be days before the Kalends of the *next month*.

8. In Leap-year the Romans reckoned February 24th, which according to *their* style was the *sixth* day before the Kalends of March (A.D. VI. Kal. Mart.) twice. Hence Leap-year was called 'Annus Bissexstus'; from bis = twice, and sextus = sixth; because the *sixth* day was reckoned *twice*; and, in the Calendars at the beginning of the Prayer-book, is called 'Bissextile.'

B.

MONEY.

1. The standard coin at Rome, *i.e.* the coin in which incomes, values, &c., were stated, like the *pound* in England, *franc* in France, and *dollar* in America, was the *sestertius* or *sesterce*, and was in value about $2\frac{1}{2}d.$ of our money; in fact, for convenience, it may be represented as a rather fat three-penny bit. Its symbol was IIS, for IIS = duo et semi = $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses.

2. The *sestertium* was not a *coin*, but a *sum* of money, and represented 1000 sestertii or sesterces. So that, while decem *sestertii* = 10 sesterces, decem *sestertia* = 10×1000 sesterces = 10,000 sesterces. Its symbol was also HS.

3. But sestertii (genitive singular), or sestertium, joined with any of the *numeral adverbs* acquired the meaning of 100,000 sesterces. So that decies sestertium = $10 \times 100,000$ sesterces = 1,000,000 sesterces. Therefore note

		Symbol.
decem sestertii	=	10 sesterces HS.X.
decem sestertia	=	10,000 „ $\frac{\text{HS.X.}}{\text{}}$
decies sestertium	=	1,000,000 „ $\frac{\text{HS.X.}}{\text{}}$

4. The 'As' was the pound (Libra) of 12 ounces; but it was also a coin corresponding to our *penny*.

The denarius = 10 asses.

Note the expressions

(a) Asses usurae = 12 per cent.

(b) Heres ex asse = heir to the whole.

(c) Heres $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ex semisse} \\ \text{ex dimidiā parte} \end{array} \right\}$ heir to half the estate.

CHAPTER XXIX.

LATIN NAMES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

1. As young pupils often do not know what *name* a capital letter stands for in a Latin sentence, it may be as well here to append a list of the abbreviations, and the names they each stand for.

2. Every Roman of any importance had three names :

(a) Praenomen (our *christian* name).

(b) Nomen (name of *gens*, or clan).

(c) Cognomen (our *surname*, which was the name of *familia*, or family).

3. Some Romans had added to them an *agnomen*, which was either a title of distinction, or sometimes what we call a *nickname*.

4.	A.	stands for	Aulus
	C.	„ „	Caius
	Cn.	„ „	Cnaeus
	D.	„ „	Decimus
	K.	„ „	Kaeso
	L.	„ „	Lucius
	M.	„ „	Marcus
	M'.	„ „	Manius
	Mam.	„ „	Mamercus
	P.	„ „	Publius
	Q.	„ „	Quintus
	S. or Sex.	„ „	Sextus
	Ser.	„ „	Servius
	Sp.	„ „	Spurius
	T.	„ „	Titus
	Ti. or Tib.	„ „	Tiberius

5. Note also the following abbreviations commonly met with.

(a) A.D. = ante diem (see Cap. XXVIII. A. 6).

(b) Kal. Non. Id. = Kalendae, Nonae, Idus (see Cap. XXVIII. A. 1, &c.).

(c) A.U.C. = anno urbis conditae: *i.e.* in the year of the foundation of the city, which was 753 B.C. And here we may as well explain how to transfer a date A.U.C. to B.C. or A.D.

If the date A.U.C. is *less* than 753, subtract it *from* 753, and you get the date B.C. If *more*, subtract 753 from *it*, and you get the date A.D.

(d) F. = Filius; M.F. = Marci filius; *i.e.* son of Marcus.

(e) HS. = sestertius (see Cap. XXVIII. B. 1).

(f) S. P. Q. R. = senatus populusque Romanus; *i.e.* the senate and the Roman people: and note that, when talking of *a* people, *i.e.* *nation*, the singular (*populus*) should always be used, not the plural (*populi*), which signifies *tribes* of a country.

CHAPTER XXX.

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

These are forms of expression met with, most commonly in the Latin Poets. We will take one or two of the best known, and explain them with instances.

1. *Aposiopesis* (from Greek *aposiopaō* = to become suddenly silent). This is where a person breaks off in the middle of a sentence, and says something else.

(a) Quos ego—sed motos praestat componere fluctus =
Whom I—(Neptune is going to say ‘will punish,’ but he breaks off and says instead) but it is better to calm the troubled waves.

(b) Quanquam, O !—sed superent quibus haec, Neptune, dedisti =
And yet, O ! (Mnestheus is going to say ‘would that I might conquer,’ but he breaks off, and says instead) but let *them* conquer to whom thou, O Neptune, hast granted this.

2. *Ellipsis* (from Greek *elleipo* = I have) is where a word is left out. This is very common with parts of the verb ‘sum,’ but is also found with other words ; as, Ventum erat ad Vestae = we had come to Vesta’s (*i.e.* temple), *aedem* being understood.

3. *Hendiadys* (from Greek *hen* = one, *dia* = by means of, and *duoin* = two) where *one* idea is expressed by means of *two*.

(a) *Molem et montes* super imposuit =
He has placed over them *a mass of mountains*
(Lit. a mass *and* mountains).

(b) *Pateris libamus et auro* =

We pour libations from *bowls of gold*

(Lit. bowls *and* gold).

4. *Onomatopœia*, or 'word-painting' (from Greek *onoma* = a name, and *poieo* = I make), where the *sense* of the passage is represented by the *sound* of the words.

(a) *Quadrupedumque putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum* =

And the hoof of the horse shakes the mouldering plain
with a sound;

where the run of the words is meant to represent the galloping of a horse.

(b) *Luctantes ventos tempestatesque sonoras* = The struggling
winds and loud resounding blasts;

where the repetition of the letter 's,' and the slow motion of the line up to the fifth foot, with the dactyl following, is meant to represent the roar of the winds round the cavern of Æolus.

(c) But perhaps as good an illustration as any may be found in the following lines from Pope's translation of Homer's *Odyssey*:

I turned me round, and, as I turned, surveyed

A mournful vision, the Sisyphean shade;

With many a weary step, and many a groan,

Up a high hill he heaves a huge round stone:

The huge round stone, resulting with a bound,

Thunders impetuous down, and smokes along the ground.

Notice how, in the fourth line, the repetition of the letter 'h' represents the difficulty Sisyphus has in getting the stone *up* the hill; while the easy run and additional foot in the last line represent the ease with which the stone comes *down*.

5. *Synesis* (from Greek *sunesis* = sense), where the *meaning* of the passage is attended to more than the *grammatical* form.

(a) A *singular* noun of multitude as the subject of a *plural* verb:

Pars in frusta secant =

Part cut them up into small pieces.

'Pars' means more than *one* person, so has its verb in the *plural* number.

Note the following curious passage from Virgil :

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt.

'Dabunt' is *plural* verb to 'Quirinus,' *singular*; because the *idea* is that *both* Romulus and Remus will give laws.

(b) A *neuter* noun with a *masculine* participle :

Capita conjurationis virgis caesi sunt =

The heads of the conspiracy were scourged.

Capita = 'heads' means *men*, so 'caesi' is *masculine*.

6. *Tmesis* (from Greek *tmēsis* = a cutting) is where a word is divided, and another word put in between.

Quo me cunque vocant fata =

Whithersoever the fates call me.

7. *Zeugma* (from Greek *zeugma* = a yoke) is where *one* verb governs two objects, but the English requires *two verbs*.

Moresque viris et mœnia ponet =

He shall *establish* customs, and *found* a city for his followers.

PART II.

GRAMMAR.

CHAPTERS I. AND II.

NOUNS.

(A) The Five Declensions.

DECLENSION I.

Mensa = a table *f*.
Stem = mens—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	mens-ă	mens-ae
Acc.	mens-am	mens-as
Gen.	mens-ae	mens-arum
Dat.	mens-ae	mens-is
Abl.	mens-â	mens-is

DECLENSION II.

Dominus = a lord *m*.
Stem = domĭn—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
Nom.	domin-us	domin-i
Voc.	domin-ě	domin-i
Acc.	domin-um	domin-os
Gen.	domin-i	domin-orum
Dat.	domin-o	domin-is
Abl.	domin-o	domin-is

Magister = master *m.*
Stem = magistr—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	magister	magistr-i
Acc.	magistr-um	magistr-os
Gen.	magistr-i	magistr-orum
Dat.	magistr-o	magistr-is
Abl.	magistr-o	magistr-is

Puer = boy *m.*
Stem = puēr—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	puer	puer-i
Acc.	puer-um	puer-os
Gen.	puer-i	puer-orum
Dat.	puer-o	puer-is
Abl.	puer-o	puer-is

Regnum = kingdom *n.*
Stem = regn—

N.V. Acc.	regn-um	regn-ă
Gen.	regn-i	regn-orum
Dat.	regn-o	regn-is
Abl.	regn-o	regn-is

Vir N. and V. = a man (stem *vīr-*) also belongs to this declension; acc, pl. *vīros*; not to be confounded with *vīres* = strength, or *virus* = juice, poison.

DECLENSION III.

Judex = a judge *c.*
Stem = judīc—

Lex = a law *f.*
Stem = lēg—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>		<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	judex	judic-es		lex	leg-es
Acc.	judic-em	judic-es		leg-em	leg-es
Gen.	judic-is	judic-um		leg-is	leg-um
Dat.	judic-i	judic-ibus		leg-i	leg-ibus
Abl.	judic-ě	judic-ibus		leg-ě	leg-ibus

Aetas = age *f.*
Stem = aetāt—

Lapis = a stone *m.*
Stem = lapīd—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>		<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	aetas	aetat-es		lapis	lapid-es
Acc.	aetat-em	aetat-es		lapid-em	lapid-es
Gen.	aetat-is	aetat-um		lapid-is	lapid-um
Dat.	aetat-i	aetat-ibus		lapid-i	lapid-ibus
Abl.	aetat-ě	aetat-ibus		lapid-ě	lapid-ibus

Nubes = a cloud *f*.
Stem = nüb—

Mons = a mountain *m*.
Stem = mont—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>		<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	nubes	nub-es		mons	mont-es
Acc.	nub-em	nub-es		mont-em	mont-es
Gen.	nub-is	nub ium		mont-is	mont-ium
Dat.	nub-i	nub-ibus		mont-i	mont-ibus
Abl.	nub-ě	nub-ibus		mont-ě	mont-ibus

Opus = a work *n*.
Stem = opěr—

Nomen = a name *n*.
Stem = nomĩn—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>		<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V. Acc.	opus	oper-ă		nomen	nomin-ă
Gen.	oper-is	oper-um		nomin-is	nomin-um
Dat.	oper-i	oper-ibus		nomin-i	nomin-ibus
Abl.	oper-ě	oper-ibus		nomin-ě	nomin-ibus

Mare = sea *n*.
Stem = măr—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>	
N.V. Acc.	mare	mar-iă	} N.B.—All nouns in -e, -al and -ar are declined like 'mare' (except 'sal' ma-c., 'mane' and 'instar,' indecl.)
Gen.	mar-is	mar-ium	
Dat. Abl.	mar-i	mar-ibus	

DECLENSION IV.

Gradus = a step *m*.
Stem = grăd—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	gradūs	grad-ūs
Acc.	grad-um	grad-ūs
Gen.	grad-ūs	grad-uum
Dat.	grad-ui	grad-ibus
Abl.	grad-u	grad-ibus

Genu = a knee *n*.
Stem = gẽn—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V. Acc.	genu	gen-uă
Gen.	gen-ūs	gen-num
Dat. Abl.	gen-u	gen-ibus

DECLENSION V.

Dies = a day *m* and *f*.

Stem = di—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>	} For <i>peculiarities</i> of declensions see Cap. II. <i>B</i> and <i>D</i> , also <i>A</i> to <i>G</i> in <i>Appendix</i> .
N. V.	dies	di-es	
Acc.	di-em	di-es	
Gen.	di-ei	di-erum	
Dat.	di-ei	di-ebus	
Abl.	di-ē	di-ebus	

(B) Greek, irregular, and compound nouns.

Aenēas = a Trojan hero *m*. (1)Orpheus = a celebrated minstrel *m*. (2)

Stem = Aenē—

,, = Orph—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>sing.</i>
Nom.	Aenēas	Orpheus
Voc.	Aene ā	Orph-eu
Acc.	Aene-an	Orph-eum or Orph-eā
Gen.	Aene-ae	Orph-ei or Orph-eōs
Dat.	Aene-ae	Orph-eo
Abl.	Aene-ā	Orph-eo

Deus = a god *m*. (2)

Stems = de— and di—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N. V.	deus	de-i, di-i, or di
Acc.	de-um	de-os
Gen.	de-i	de-orum or de-ūm
Dat. Abl.	de-o	de-is, di-is or di-s

Domus = a house *f*. (2 and 4)

Stem = dōm—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N. V.	domūs	dom-ūs
Acc.	dom-um	dom-os or dom-ūs
Gen.	dom-ūs	dom-uum or dom-orum
Dat.	dom-ui	dom-ibus
Abl.	dom-o	dom-ibus

Senex = an old man *m*. (3)

Stem = sēn—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N. V.	senex	sen-es
Acc.	sen-em	sen-es
Gen.	sen-is	sen-um
Dat.	sen-i	sen-ibus
Abl.	sen-ē	sen-ibus

Sus = a pig *c.* (3)

Stem = su—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	sus	su-es
Acc.	su-em	su-es
Gen.	su-is	su-um
Dat.	su-i	su-ibus or subus
Abl.	su-ě	su-ibus or subus

Bos = ox or cow *c.* (3)

Stems = böv— and bo—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
N.V.	bos	bov-es
Acc.	bov-em	bov-es
Gen.	bov-is	bov-um or bo-um
Dat.	bov-i	bov-ibus, bobus, or bubus
Abl.	bov-ě	bov-ibus, bobus, or bubus

Vis = strength *f.* (3)

Stem = v— or vir—

	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>	
N.V.	vis	vir-es	instar = likeness
Acc.	vim	vir-es	mane = morning
Gen.	—	vir-ium	fas = right
Dat.	—	vir-ibus	nefas = wrong
Abl.	vi	vir-ibus	are <i>indeclinable</i>

The following have no plural.

	Jupiter <i>m.</i> (3) Stem = Jöv—	Respublica State <i>f.</i> (5 and 1)	Jusjurandum Oath <i>n.</i> (3 and 2)
N.V.	Jupiter	respublicā	jusjurandum
Acc.	Jov-em	republicam	jusjurandum
Gen.	Jov-is	reipublicae	jurisjurandi
Dat.	Jov-i	reipublicae	jurijurando
Abl.	Jov-ě	republicā	jurejurando

For *special* Latin Nouns see Chapter XXI.

(C) Genders of Nouns.

General Rules.

<i>masculine.</i>	<i>feminine.</i>	<i>neuter.</i>
Males	Females	Indeclinable nouns ;
Months	Cities	and the 'Verb-Infini-
Mountains	Countries	tive, when used as a
Rivers	Islands	noun
Winds	Trees	

Any noun that can be used equally of a *man* or *woman*, such as 'civis = citizen,' 'dux = leader,' &c., are *common* gender, but are usually *masculine*.

masculine.

Greek nouns in -as and -es: names and designations of *males*, as Galba = an emperor's name
 nauta = a sailor
 also *Hadria* = *Adriatic*

masculine.

Nouns in -us and -er

masculine.

{ er, -or, -os
 -es (increasing)
 -o (when not -do, -go, -io) }

exceptions.

linter *f.* = boat
 acer *n.* = maple
 cadaver *n.* = corpse
 iter *n.* = journey

DECLENSION I.

feminine.

All common nouns in -a

neuter.
 None

DECLENSION II.

feminine.

alvus = paunch
 Arctus = Great Bear
 catbasus = linen
 colus = distaff
 humus = ground
 pampinus = vine-leaf
 vannus = { winnowing
 fan
 names of trees and jewels

neuter.

nouns in -um
 = sea
 = juice, poison
 = common people
 (rarely masculine)

pelagus
 virus
 vulgus

DECLENSION III.

feminine.

{ -do, -go, -io
 -as, -is, -aus, -x
 -es (not increasing)
 -s (impure) }

neuter.

l . a . n . c . e . t
 -ar, -ur, -us

exceptions.

adamas *m.* = adamant
 as *m.* = penny
 elephas *m.* = elephant
 gigas *m.* = giant

consul *m.*
 mugil *m.*
 pugil *m.*
 sal *m.*

= consul^l
 = mullet
 = boxer
 = salt

papaver <i>n.</i>	== poppy	mas <i>m.</i>	== male	sol <i>m.</i>	== sun ¹
piper <i>n.</i>	== pepper	vas <i>m.</i>	== bail	attagen <i>m.</i>	== grouse
siler <i>n.</i>	== osier	amis <i>m.</i>	== river	delphin <i>m.</i>	== dolphin
tuber <i>n.</i>	== hump	axis <i>m.</i>	== axle	pecten <i>m.</i>	== comb
uber <i>n.</i>	== udder	canalis <i>m.</i>	== canal	ren <i>m.</i>	== kidney
ver <i>n.</i>	== spring-tide	casses <i>m.</i>	== nets	splen <i>m.</i>	== spleen
verber <i>n.</i>	== lash	collis <i>m.</i>	== hill		
arbor <i>f.</i>	== tree	clunis <i>m.</i>	== hind-leg	gorgon <i>f.</i>	== gorgon
aequor <i>n.</i>	== sea	crinis <i>m.</i>	== hair	halcyon <i>f.</i>	== king-fisher
cor <i>n.</i>	== heart	cucumis <i>m.</i>	== cucumber	sindon <i>f.</i>	== cloth
marmor <i>n.</i>	== marble	ensis <i>m.</i>	== sword	fur <i>m.</i>	== thief
		fascis <i>m.</i>	== bundle	furfur <i>m.</i>	== bran
cos <i>f.</i>	== whetstone	follis <i>m.</i>	== bellows	turtur <i>m.</i>	== turtle-dove
dos <i>f.</i>	== dowry	fustis <i>m.</i>	== bludgeon	vultur <i>m.</i>	== vulture
os (ossis) <i>n.</i>	== bone	glis <i>m.</i>	== dormouse		
os (oris) <i>n.</i>	== face, mouth	ignis <i>m.</i>	== fire	lepus <i>m.</i>	== hare
		lapis <i>m.</i>	== stone	mus <i>m.</i>	== mouse
compes <i>f.</i>	== fetter	manes <i>m.</i>	== ghosts	incus <i>f.</i>	== anvil
merces <i>f.</i>	== pay, hire	mensis <i>m.</i>	== month	juventus <i>f.</i>	== youth
merges <i>f.</i>	== sheaf	natalis <i>m.</i>	== birthday	palus <i>f.</i>	== marsh
quies <i>f.</i>	== rest	orbis <i>m.</i>	== circle	pecus (-udis) <i>f.</i>	== beast
seges <i>f.</i>	== crop	panis <i>m.</i>	== bread	salus <i>f.</i>	== { health safety
teges <i>f.</i>	== mat	piscis <i>m.</i>	== fish	senectus <i>f.</i>	== old-age
aes <i>n.</i>	== brass	postis <i>m.</i>	== door-post	servitus <i>f.</i>	== slavery
		pulvis <i>m.</i>	== dust	tellus <i>f.</i>	== earth
margo <i>c.</i>	== margin	sanguis <i>m.</i>	== blood		
cardo <i>m.</i>	== hinge	torris <i>m.</i>	== fire-brand		
curculio <i>m.</i>	== weevil	unguis <i>m.</i>	== nail		
ligo <i>m.</i>	== mattock	vectis <i>m.</i>	== lever		
ordo <i>m.</i>	== rank	vermis <i>m.</i>	== worm		
papilio <i>m.</i>	== butterfly	callis <i>c.</i>	== path		
praedo <i>m.</i>	== pirate	cinis <i>c.</i>	== ashes		
pugio <i>m.</i>	== dagger	finis <i>c.</i>	== end		

scipio <i>m.</i>	== staff	funis <i>c.</i>	== cable
senio <i>m.</i>	== set of six	sentis <i>c.</i>	== thorn
ternio <i>m.</i>	== set of three	torquis <i>c.</i>	== necklace
vespertilio <i>m.</i>	== bat	most in -ex are <i>masculine</i> , but	
echo <i>f.</i>	== echo	imbrex <i>c.</i>	== tile
caro <i>f.</i>	== flesh	obex <i>c.</i>	== bolt
		pumex <i>c.</i>	== pumice
		rumex <i>c.</i>	== sorrel
		silex <i>c.</i>	== flint
		forfex <i>f.</i>	== shears
		lex <i>f.</i>	== law
		nex <i>f.</i>	== death
		supellex <i>f.</i>	== furniture
		calix <i>m.</i>	== cup
		fornix <i>m.</i>	== arch
		phoenix <i>m.</i>	== phoenix
		acinaces <i>m.</i>	== scimitar
		verres <i>m.</i>	== boar
		bidens <i>m.</i>	== hoe
		chalybs <i>m.</i>	== iron
		cliens <i>m.</i>	== client
		dens <i>m.</i>	== tooth
		fons <i>m.</i>	== fountain
		gryps <i>m.</i>	== griffin
		hydrops <i>m.</i>	== dropsy
		mons <i>m.</i>	== mountain
		occidens <i>m.</i>	== west
		oriens <i>m.</i>	== east
		pons <i>m.</i>	== bridge
		rudens <i>m.</i>	== cable

tridens *m.* = trident
triens *m.* = four ounces

DECLENSION IV.

masculine.
nouns in -us

acus
domus
Idus
manus
porticus
tribus

feminine.

= needle
= house
= the Ides
= hand
= porch
= tribe

cornu
gelu
genu
tonitru
veru

neuter.
= horn
= frost
= knee
= thunder
= spit

DECLENSION V.

dies
meridies
masculine.
= day (*c.* in sing.)
= noon

feminine.
other nouns in -es

neuter.
None

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVES.

DECLENSIONS I. AND II.

(A) Bonus = good
Stem = bōn—

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	bon-us,	bon-ă,	bon-um	bon-i,	bon-ae,	bon-ă
Voc.	bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um	bon-i,	bon-ae,	bon-ă
Acc.	bon-um,	bon-am,	bon-um	bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-ă
Gen.	bon-i,	bon-ae,	bon-i	bon-orum,	bon-arum,	bon-orum
Dat.	bon-o,	bon-ae,	bon-o	bon-is,	bon-is,	bon-is
Abl.	bon-o,	bon-ă,	bon-o	bon-is,	bon-is,	bon-is

Niger = black
Stem = nigr—

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.V.	niger,	nigr-ă,	nigr-um	nigr-i,	nigr-ae,	nigr-ă
Acc.	nigr-um,	nigr-am,	nigr-um	nigr-os,	nigr-as,	nigr-ă
Gen.	nigr-i,	nigr-ae,	nigr-i	nigr-orum,	nigr-arum,	nigr-orum
Dat.	nigr-o,	nigr-ae,	nigr-o	nigr-is,	nigr-is,	nigr-is
Abl.	nigr-o,	nigr-ă,	nigr-o	nigr-is,	nigr-is,	nigr-is

Tener = tender
Stem = tēnēr—

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.V.	tener,	tener-ă,	tener-um	tener-i,	tener-ae,	tener-ă
Acc.	tener-um,	tener-am,	tener-um	tener-os,	tener-as,	tener-a
Gen.	tener-i,	tener-ae,	tener-i	tenerorum,	tener-arum,	tener-orum
Dat.	tener-o,	tener-ae,	tener-o	tener-is,	tener-is,	tener-is
Abl.	tener-o,	tener-ă,	tener-o	tener-is,	tener-is,	tener-is

DECLENSION III.

Tristis = sad
Stem = trist—

	<i>sing.</i>		<i>plu.</i>	
	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.V.	trist-is , trist-e		trist-es, trist-iă	
Acc.	trist-em, trist-e		trist-es, trist-iă	
Gen.	trist-is		trist-ium	
Dat. Abl.	trist-i		trist-ibus	

Acer = keen
Stem = acr—

	<i>sing.</i>		<i>plu.</i>	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f. n.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.V.	(acer), acr-is, acr-e		acr-es, acr-iă	
Acc.	acr-em, acr-e		acr-es, acr-iă	
Gen.	acr-is		acr-ium	
Dat. Abl.	acr-i		acr-ibus	

Melior = better
Stem = mēliōr—

	<i>sing.</i>		<i>plu.</i>	
	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.V.	melior, melius		melior-es, melior-ă	
Acc.	melior-em, melius		melior-es, melior-ă	
Gen.	melior-is		melior-um	
Dat.	melior-i		melior-ibus	
Abl.	melior-ě (rarely i)		melior-ibus	

Felix = happy
Stem = felīc—

	<i>sing.</i>		<i>plu.</i>	
	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.V.	felix		felic-es, felic-iă	
Acc.	felic-em, felix		felic-es, felic-iă	
Gen.	felic-is		felic-ium	
Dat.	felic-i		felic-ibus	
Abl.	felic-i (rarely ě)		felic-ibus	

Ingens = large
Stem = ingent—

	<i>sing.</i>		<i>plu.</i>	
	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N.V.	ingens		ingent es, ingent-iă	
Acc.	ingent-em, ingens		ingent-es, ingent-iă	
Gen.	ingent-is		ingent-ium	
Dat.	ingent-i		ingent-ibus	
Abl.	ingent-i (or ě)		ingent-ibus	

Vetus = old
Stem = vĕtĕr—

	<i>sing.</i>		<i>plu.</i>	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f. n.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>	
N.V.		vetus		veter-es, veter-ă
Acc.		veter-em,		veter-es, veter-ă
Gen.		veter-is		veter-um
Dat.		veter-i		veter-ibus
Abl.		veter-ĕ		veter-ibus

(B) Comparison of adjectives.

	<i>positive.</i>	<i>comparative.</i>	<i>superlative.</i>
alt-us	= high	alt-ior	alt-issimus
niger	= black	nigr-ior	niger-rimus
tener	= tender	tener-ior	tener-rimus
trist-is	= sad	trist-ior	trist-issimus
felix	= happy	felic-ior	felic-issimus
ingens	= large	ingent-ior	ingent-issimus
facil-is	= easy	facil-ior	facil-limus
difficil-is	= difficult	difficil-ior	difficil-limus
simil-is	= like	simil-ior	simil-limus
dissimil-is	= unlike	dissimil-ior	dissimil-limus
gracil-is	= slender	gracil-ior	gracil-limus
humil-is	= lowly	humil-ior	humil-limus

N.B.—All *others* in -ilis make superlative -ilissimus, *e.g.*

util-is	= useful	util-ior	util-issimus
maledic-us	= abusive	maledic-entior	maledic-entissimus
benefic-us	= beneficent	benefic-entior	benefic-entissimus
benevol-us	= benevolent	benevol-entior	benevol-entissimus
dubius	= doubtful	magis dubius	maxime dubius
aequus	= equal	aequ-ior	aequ-issimus
(Indecl.)			
nequam	= worthless	nequ-ior	nequ-issimus
frugi	= honest	frugal-ior	frugal-issimus

Irregular.

bonus	= good	melior	optimus
malus	= bad	pejor	pessimus
magnus	= great	major	maximus
parvus	= small	minor	minimus
multus	= much	plus	plurimus

		<i>sing.</i>	<i>plu.</i>
	Nom.	plus	plur-es-ă
	Acc.	plus	plur-es-ă
	Gen.	plur-is	plur-ium
	Dat.	plur-i	plur-ibus
	Abl.	plur-e	plur-ibus
senex	= old	{ senior natu major }	natu maximus
juvenis	= young	{ junior natu minor }	natu minimus
dives	= rich	{ divitior ditior }	{ divitissimus ditissimus }
vetus	= old	vetust-ior	veter-rimus
egenus	= needy	egent-ior	egent-issimus
providus	= provident	provid-entior	provid-entissimus
(Gk ôkûs	= swift)	ocior	ocissimus

Degrees from prepositions.

citra	= on this side	citerior	citîmus
extra	= outside	exterior	{ extrêmus extîmus }
infra	= below	inferior	{ infîmus îmus }
intra	= within	interior	intîmus
post	= after	posterior	{ postrêmus postûmus }
prae	= before	prior	prîmus
prope	= near	proprior	proxîmus
supra	= above	superior	{ suprêmus summus }
ultra	= beyond	ulterior	ultîmus

Degrees from adverbs.

dignē	= worthily	dignius	dignissimē
fortiter	= bravely	fortius	fortissime
celeriter	= quickly	celerius	celerrime
audacter	= boldly	audacius	audacissime
benē	= well	melius	optime
malē	= ill	pejus	pestime
magnopere	= greatly	magis	maxime
paulum	= little	minus	minime
multum	= much	plus	plurimum
diu	= long	diutius	diutissime
saepē	= often	saepius	saepissime
nuper	= lately		nuperrime

For rules for the use of Comparatives see Cap. III. C.

(C) Numerals.

	<i>Cardinal.</i> How many?	<i>Ordinal.</i> What order?	<i>Distributive.</i> How many a-piece?	<i>Adverbs.</i> How often?
1	unus	primus	singuli	semel
2	duo	secundus or alter	bini	bis
3	tres	tertius	terni or trini	ter
4	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
5	quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies
6	sex	sextus	seni	sexies
7	septem	septimus	septeni	septies
8	octo	octavus	octoni	octies
9	novem	nonus	noveni	novies
10	decem	decimus	deni	decies
11	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies
12	duodecim	duodecimimus	duodeni	duodecies
13	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredecies
14	quattuor decim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni	quattuordecies
15	quindecim	quintus decimus	quini deni	quindecies
16	sedecim	sextus decimus	seni deni	sedecies
17	septendecim	septimus decimus	septeni deni	septies decies
18	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicensi	duodevicies
19	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undevicensi	undevicies
20	viginti	vicesimus	viceni	vicies
21	unus et viginti	primus et vicesimus	viceni singuli	semel et vices
30	triginta	tricesimus	tricensi	trices
40	quadraginta	quadragessimus	quadrageni	quadragies
50	quinquaginta	quingagesimus	quingageni	quingagies
60	sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexagies
70	septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuagies
80	octoginta	octogesimus	octogeni	octogies
90	nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonageni	nonagies
100	centum	centesimus	centeni	centies
101	centum et unus	centesimus primus	centeni singuli	centies semel
200	ducenti	ducentesimus	ducenti	ducenties
300	trecenti	trecentesimus	trecenti	trecenties
400	quadringenti	quadringentesimus	quadringeni	quadringenties
500	quingenti	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingenties
600	sexcenti	sexcentesimus	secenti	sexcenties
700	septingenti	septingentesimus	septingeni	septingenties
800	octingenti	octingentesimus	octingeni	octingenties
900	nongenti	nongentesimus	nongeni	nongenties
1000	mille	millesimus	singula millia	millies
2000	duo millia	bis millesimus	bina millia	bis millies

The *three first* cardinal numbers are declined as follows :

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plur.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	unus	unā	unum	uni	unae	unā
Acc.	unum	unam	unum	unos	unas	unā
Gen.		unius		unorum	unarum	unorum
Dat.		unī			unis	
Abl.	uno	unā	uno		unis	

The plural of 'unus' is used with words which have a plural *form* and singular *meaning* :

e.g. una castra = one camp : but *bina* castra = two camps.

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plur.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	tres		tria
Acc.	duos (duo)	duas	duo	tres		tria
Gen.	duorum	duarum	duorum		trium	
D.Abl.	duobus	duabus	duobus		tribus	

Like 'duo' decline 'ambo = both.' Like 'tria' decline 'millia.'

The *cardinals* from 4 to 100 are indeclinable : but from 200 to 900 they are declined like the plural of 'bonus.'

Mille = 1000 is indeclinable : but its plural is declined like the neuter of 'tres.'

The *ordinals* are declined like 'bonus' : and the *distributives* like the plural of 'bonus.'

The numeral *adverbs* are indeclinable.

For further information about the numerals see Cap. III. *D.*

CHAPTER IV.

PRONOUNS.

(A) Personal.

(1st pers.)		<i>sing.</i>		<i>plur.</i>
Nom.	}	ego	= I	nos = we
Acc.		me	= me	nos = us
Gen.		mei	= of me	{ nostri } = of us
Dat.		mihi	= to or for me	{ nostrum } = of us
Abl.		me	= from me	nobis = to or for us
				nobis = from us

(2nd pers.)		<i>sing.</i>		<i>plur.</i>
Nom.	}	tu	= thou (Voc.)	vos = ye (Voc.)
Acc.		te	= thee	vos = you
Gen.		tui	= of thee	{ vestri } = of you
Dat.		tibi	= to or for thee	{ vestrum } = of you
Abl.		te	= from thee	vobis = to or for you
				vobis = from you

(3rd pers.) is ea id
 „ he she it
 (also demonstrative = 'that.')

<i>sing.</i>				<i>plur.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	is	ea	id	ii (or ci)	eae	eā
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eos	eas	eā
Gen.		ejus		eorum	earum	eorum
Dat.		ei			iis (or eis)	
Abl.	eo	eā	eo		iis (or eis)	

(B) Definitive.

Idem = the same

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	īdem	eādem	īdem	ii(ei)dem	eaedem	eādem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eosdem	easdem	eādem
Gen.		eiusdem		eorundem	earundem	eorundem
Dat.		eidem			iisdem or eisdem	
Abl.	eodem	eādem	eodem		iisdem or eisdem	

Ipse = self

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ipse	ipsā	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsā
Gen.		ipsius		ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.		ipsi			ipsis	
Abl.	ipso	ipsā	ipso		ipsis	

(C) Demonstratives.

Ille = that

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	ille	illā	illud	illi	illae	illā
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illā
Gen.		illius		illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.		illi			illis	
Abl.	illo	illā	illo		illis	

Like 'ille' decline 'iste' = that-of-yours.

Hic = this

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hi	hae	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hos	has	haec
Gen.		hujus		horum	harum	horum
Dat.		huic			his	
Abl.	hoc	hac	hoc		his	

(D) Relative.

Qui = who? which?

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
Gen.		cujus		quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.		cui		quibus	(queis)	(quīs)
Abl.	quo	quā	quo	quibus	or (queis)	or (quīs)

(E) Interrogative.

Quis = who, what

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	quis	quae	quid	qui	quae	quae
Acc.	quem	quam	quid	quos	quas	quae
Gen.		cujus		quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.		cui		quibus	(queis)	(quīs)
Abl.	quo	quā	quo	quibus	or (queis)	or (quīs)

(F) Indefinite.

Quis = anyone or thing

	<i>sing.</i>			<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	quis	quā	quid	qui	quae	{ quae } { quā }
Acc.	quem	quam	quid	quos	quas	{ quae } { quā }
Gen.		cujus		quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.		cui		quibus	(queis)	(quīs)
Abl.	quo	quā	quo	quibus	or (queis)	or (quīs)

(G) Reflexive.

sing. & plu.

Nom.	wanting	
	him-	
Acc.	se = her-	} self, themselves
	it-	
Gen.	sui = of himself, &c.	
Dat.	sibi = to or for himself, &c.	
Abl.	se = from himself, &c.	

(H) Possessive.

sing. & plu.

meus = mine	} declined
tuus = thine	
suus = his own, &c.	} 'bonus'
noster = our	
vester = your	} 'niger'

For various rules for using the above see Cap. IV. *A* to *G*; and for 'Correlatives' *H*.

Pronominals.

The following pronominal adjectives are declined like 'unus' = one, and make their genitive singular in -ius, and dative in -i in all genders.

Solus = alone, totus = whole, ullus = any, nullus = none, alius = another, alter = *the* other, uter = which of two? neuter = neither.

Declension of alius = other.

Stem = ali—

<i>sing.</i>				<i>plu.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	alius	aliā	aliud	ali-i	ali-ae	ali-ā
Acc.	ali-um	ali-am	ali-ud	ali-os	ali-as	ali-ā
Gen.		alius		ali-orum	ali-arum	ali-orum
Dat.		ali-i			ali-is	
Abl.	ali-o	ali-ā	ali-o		ali-is	

N.B.—Nemo (ne-homo), Acc. nemin-em, Gen. *nullius*,
 Dat. nemin-i, Abl. *nullo*. } = no one.

See Cap. IV. *I* and *ŷ*.

CHAPTER V.

VERBS.

(A)	sum	fui	esse
	I am	I have been	to be
	Present Stem = es—	Perfect Stem = fu—	

Present-Stem Tenses.

<i>Indicative.</i> Present = I am.	<i>Subjunctive.</i> Present = { I may } be. { Let me }	<i>Imperative.</i> Present. es = be thou este = be ye	<i>Infinitive.</i> Present. esse = to be	<i>Participles.</i> Present. none.
es est sumus estis sunt	sim sis sit simus sitis sint	esto = thou shalt be esto = he shall be estote = ye shall be sunto = they shall be	Future. (futurus esse) to be { or fore } about to be	Future. futurus = about to be
Imperfect = I was. eram eras erat eramus eratis erant	Impf. = I might be. essem or forem esses or fores esset or foret essemus essetis essent or forent			Though 'sum' has <i>no</i> present participle, we find absens = absent praesens = present
Fut. Simp. = I shall be. ero eris erit erimus eritis erunt				

Perfect-Stem Tenses.

Perfect = I have been or I was, fu-i fu-isti fu-it fu-imus fu-istis fu-erunt (ère)	Perfect = I may have been. fu-erim fu-eris fu-erit fu-erimus fu-eritis fu-erint	None.	Perfect. fu-isse = to have been absum = am absent adsum = " present desum = " wanting insum = " in, or among intersum = " among	Compounds of 'sum' conjugated as above. obsum = am in the way of praesum = " set over to prosum = " serviceable to subsum = " under supersum = " over, or survive
Plpf. = I had been. fu-eram fu-eras fu-erat fu-eramus fu-eratis fu-erant	Plupf. = I might have been. fu-issem fu-isses fu-isset fu-issemus fu-issetis fu-issent			
Fut. Perf. = I shall have been. fu-ero fu-eris fu-erit fu-erimus fu-eritis fu-erint				

N.B. 'Prosum' inserts a 'd' between the 'o' and 'e,'
where they occur;
e.g. prosum, prodes, prodest, &c.

The above take the *dative* of the direct object, except
'absum' which takes the *ablative*.

e.g. Romā abest = he is away from Rome.

CONJUGATION I. (*Active*).

amō, amare, amavi, amatum (love).

Present Stem = am— Perfect Stem = amav— Supine Stem = amat—

<i>Present-Stem Tenses.</i>			
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Present = I love.	Present = { I may } love.	Present = love thou.	Present.
am-o	{ Let me }	am-a	am-are = to love
am-as	am-em	am-ate	_____
am-at	am-es	Future =	
am-amus	am-et	Thou shalt love.	
am-atis	am-emus		
am-ant	am-etis	am-ato	
_____	am-ent	am-ato	
Impf. = I was loving.	Imperfect = I might love.	am-atote	
am-abam	am-arem	am-anto	
am-abas	am-ares	_____	
am-abat	am-aret		
am-abamus	am-aremus		
am-abatis	am-aretis		
am-abant	am-aient		
_____	_____		
Fut. Simp. =			
I shall love.			
am-abo			
am-abis			
am-abit			
am-abimus			
am-abitis			
am-abunt			

			<i>Participles.</i>
			Present.
			am-ans = (a person, &c.) loving.

			<i>Gerunds.</i>
			G. am-andi = of loving
			D. am-ando = to or for loving
			Acc. am-andum = loving
			Abl. am-ando = by loving
			N.B. The above signify the mere <i>action</i> implied by the verb. (See Cap. XI.)

Perfect =
I (have) loved.
amav-i
amav-isti
amav-it
amav-imus
amav-istis
amav-erunt (ēre)

Plupf. = I had loved.
amav-eram
amav-eras
amav-erat
amav-eramus
amav-eratis
amav-erant

Fut. Perf. =
I shall have loved.
amav-ero
amav-eris
amav-erit
amav-erimus
amav-eritis
amav-erint

Perfect = I may have loved.
amav-erim
amav-eris
amav-erit
amav-erimus
amav-eritis
amav-erint

Plpf. = I might have loved.
amav-issem
amav-isses
amav-isset
amav-issemus
amav-issetis
amav-issent

None.

Perfect =
amav-isse
to have loved

Supine-Stem Tenses.

Supines.
amat-um =
(in order) to love
amat-u =
to be loved
(See Cap. XII.)
Future.
amat-urus esse =
to be about to love.

Future.
amat-urus = about to love.

N.B. The above may be used
with *any* part of the verb
'sum,'
e.g. The present subjunctive
to make a *future subjunctive*
(See Cap. X.)

CONJUGATION II. (*Active*).

moneo, mon-ère, monui, monitum (advise).

Present Stem = mon --

Perfect Stem = monu--

Supine Stem = monit--

Present-Stem Tenses.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present = I advise. mon-eo mon-et mon-emus mon-etis mon-ent	Present = { I may } advise. mon-eam mon-eas mon-eat mon-eamus mon-eatis mon-eant	Present = advise thou. mon-è mon-ète Future = thou shalt advise. mon-èto mon-eto mon-etote mon-ento	Present. mon-ère = to advise,	<i>Participles.</i> Present. mon-ens = (a person, &c.) advising Gerunds. G. mon-endi = of advising D. mon-endo = to or for advising Acc. mon-endum = advising Abl. mon-endo = by advising N.B.—The above signify the mere <i>action</i> implied by the verb (see Cap. XI.).

Perfect = I (have) advised. monu-i monu-isti monu-it monu-imus monu-istis monu-erunt (ēre)	Perfect = I may have advised. monu-erim monu-eris monu-erit monu-erimus monu-eritis monu-erint	Perfect. monu-isse = to have advised.	None.
Plupf. = I had advised. monu-eram monu-eras monu-erat monu-eramus monu-eratis monu-erant	Plupf. = I might have advised. monu-issem monu-isses monu-isset monu-issemus monu-issetis monu-issent	Supines. monit-um = in order to advise monit-u = to be advised (See Cap. XII.) Future. monit-urus esse = to be about to advise	Supine-stem tenses. Future. monit-urus = about to advise N.B.—The above may be used with any part of the verb 'sum,' e.g., the present subjunctive, to make a future subjunctive. (See Cap. X.)
Fut. Perf. = I shall have advised. monu-ero monu-eris monu-erit monu-erimus monu-eritis monu-erint			

CONJUGATION III. (*Active*).

rego, regère, rexi, rectum (iule).

Present Stem = reg—

Perfect Stem = rex—

Supine Stem = rect—

Present-Stem Tenses.

Indicative.
Present = I rule.
reg-o
reg-is
reg-it
reg-îmus
reg-îtis
reg-unt

Impf. = I was ruling
reg-ebam
reg-ebas
reg-ebat
reg-ebamus
reg-ebatis
reg-ebant

Fut. Impf. =
I shall rule.
reg-am
reg-es
reg-et
reg-emus
reg-etis
reg-ent

Subjunctive.
Present = { I may } rule.
 { Let me }
reg-am
reg-as
reg-at
reg-amus
reg-atis
reg-ant

Impf. = I might rule.
reg-ërem
reg-eres
reg-eret
reg-eremus
reg-eretis
reg-erent

Imperative.
Present = rule thou.
reg-ë
reg-ite

Future =
thou shalt rule.
reg-ïto
reg-ito
reg-ïtote
reg-unto

Infinitive.
Present.
reg-ère = to rule.

Participles.
Present.
reg-ens = (a person, &c.) ruling.

Gerunds.
G. reg-endi = of ruling
D. reg-endo = to or for ruling
Acc. reg-endum = ruling
Abl. reg-endo = by ruling

N.B.—The above signify the mere *action* implied by the verb (see Cap. XI.).

Perfect-Stem Tenses.

Perfect = I (have) ruled.	Perfect = I may have ruled.	None,	Perfect. rex-isse = to have ruled.	None.
rex-i rex-isti rex-it rex-imus rex-istis rex-erunt (ēre)	Perfect = I might have ruled. rex-erim rex-eris rex-erit rex-erimus rex-eritis rex-erint			
Plupf. = I had ruled. rex-eram rex-eras rex-erat rex-eramus rex-eratis rex-erant	Plupf. = I might have ruled. rex-issem rex-isses rex-isset rex-issemus rex-issetis rex-issent			
Fut. Perf. = I shall have ruled. rex-ero rex-eris rex-erit rex-erimus rex-eritis rex-erint				

Supine-Stem Tenses.

Supines.
rect-um =
in order to rule.
rect-u =
to be ruled.
(See Cap. XII.)
Future.
rect-urus esse =
to be about to rule.

Future.
rect-urus = about to rule.

N.B.—The above may be used with *any* part of the verb 'sum'; e.g., the present subjunctive, to make a future subjunctive.
(See Cap. X.)

CONJUGATION IV. (*Active*).

audio, audire, audi(v)i, auditum (hear).

Present Stem = aud— Perfect Stem = audi(v)— Supine Stem = audit—

<i>Present-Stem Tenses.</i>			
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Present = I hear. aud-io aud-is aud-it aud-imus aud-itis aud-iunt	Present = { I may } hear. { Let me } aud-iam aud-ias aud-iat aud-iamus aud-iatis aud-iant	Present. hear thou. aud-i aud-ite — Future. thou shalt hear. aud-ito aud-ito aud-ito aud-iunto —	Present. aud-ire = to hear. —
Impf. = I was hearing. aud-iebam aud-iebas aud-iebat aud-iebamus aud-iebatis aud-iebant	Impf. = I might hear. aud-irem aud-ires aud-iret aud-iremus aud-iretis aud-irent	—	Participles. Present. aud-iens = (a person, &c.) hearing. — Gerunds. G. aud-iendi = of hearing. D. aud-iendo = to or for hearing. Acc. aud-iendum = hearing. Abl. aud-iendo = by hearing. — N.B. The above signify the mere <i>action</i> implied by the verb. (See Cap. XI.)
Fut. Simp. = I shall hear. aud-iam aud-ies aud-iet aud-iemus aud-ietis aud-ient	—	—	—

Perfect-Stem Tenses.

Perfect = I (have) heard.	Perfect = I may have heard.	None.	Perfect. audi(v)-isse = to have heard.	None.
audi(v)-i audi(v)-isti audi(v)-it audi(v)-imus audi(v)-istis audi(v)-erunt (êre)	audi(v)-erim audi(v)-eris audi(v)-erit audi(v)-erimus audi(v)-eritis audi(v)-erint			
Plpf. = I had heard.	Plpf. = I might have heard.			
audi(v)-eram audi(v)-eras audi(v)-erat audi(v)-eramus audi(v)-eratis audi(v)-erant	audi(v)-issem audi(v)-isses audi(v)-isset audi(v)-issemus audi(v)-issetis audi(v)-issent			
Fut. Perf. =	I shall have heard.			
audi(v)-ero audi(v)-eris audi(v)-erit audi(v)-erimus audi(v)-eritis audi(v)-erint				
<i>Supine-Stem Tenses.</i> Supines. audit-um = in order to hear. audit-u = to be heard. (See Cap. XII.) Future. audit-urus esse = to be about to hear. Future. audit-urus = about to hear. N.B. The above may be used with <i>any</i> part of the verb 'sum'; e.g. the present subjunctive, to make a future subjunctive. (See Cap. X.)				

(B) and (C) CONJUGATION I. (*Passive*).

amor, amari, amatus sum.

*Simple Tenses.**Indicative.*

Present = I am loved.

amo-r
 ama-ris (re)
 ama-tur
 ama-mur
 ama-mini
 ama-ntur

Impf. = I was (being) loved.

amaba-r
 amaba-ris (re)
 amaba-tur
 amaba-mur
 amaba-mini
 amaba-ntur

Fut. Simp. = I shall be loved.

amabo-r
 amabē-ris (re)
 amabī-tur
 amabi mur
 amabi-mini
 amabu-ntur

*Subjunctive.*Present = { I may } be loved.
 { Let me }

ame-r
 amē-ris (re)
 ame-tur
 ame-mur
 ame-mini
 ame-ntur

Impf. = I might be loved.

amare-r
 amarē-ris (re)
 amare-tur
 amare-mur
 amare-mini
 amare-ntur

*Imperative.*Present =
 be thou loved.

ama-re
 ama-mini

Future =
 thou shalt be loved.

ama-tor
 ama-tor

*Participles.*Present.
 None.*Gerundive.*

am andus =
 one that 'is to' or
 'must be loved.'
 (See Cap. XI.)

Perfect.

amat-us =

Being } loved.
 or }
 having been }

Compound Tenses.

Perfect = I { have been } loved.
 was

amatus sim
 " es
 " est
 amati sumus
 " estis
 " sunt

Plupf. = I had been loved.
 amatus eram

" eras
 " erat
 amati eramus
 " eratis
 " erant

Fut. Perf. =
 I shall have been loved.

amatus ero
 " eris
 " erit
 amati erimus
 " eritis
 " erunt

Perfect =
 I may have been loved.

amatus sim
 " sis
 " sit
 amati simus
 " sitis
 " sint

Plupf. =
 I might have been loved.

amatus essem
 " esses
 " esset
 amati essemus
 " essetis
 " essent

None.

Dependent Verbs of
 Conj. I. are con-
 jugated as above,
 but have future in-
 finitive *active*, and
 full complement of
 participles.
 (See Cap. V. C.)

Perfect.
 amatus esse =
 to have been loved.

Future.
 amatum iri =
 to be about to be
 loved.
 (See Cap. VIII.)

e.g. hortari = to exhort.

Fut. Inf. hortaturus esse
not (hortatum iri) =
 To be about to exhort.

Pres. Part. = hortans =
 (a person, &c.) exhorting.

But Gerundive = hortandus =
 to be exhorted.

CONJUGATION II. (*passive*).

moneor, monēri, monitus sum.

Simple Tenses.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present = I am advised. moneo-r monē-ris (re) mone-tur mone-mur mone-mini mone-ntur	Pres. = { I may } be advised. { Let me } monea-r monea-ris (re) monea-tur monea-mur monea-mini monea-ntur Impf. = I might be advised. monere-r monere-ris (re) monere-tur monere-mur monere-mini monere-ntur	Present = be thou advised. monē-re mone-mini Future = thou shalt be advised. monē-tor mone-tor mone-ntor	monē-ri = to be advised.	<i>Present.</i> None. <i>Gerundive.</i> monendus = one that 'is' or 'must be advised.' (See Cap. XI.) <i>Perfect.</i> monit-us = being or having been } advised.
Impf. = I was (being) advised. moneba-r moneba-ris (re) moneba-tur moneba-mur moneba-mini moneba-ntur				
Fut. Simp. = I shall be advised. monebo-r monebē-ris (re) monebĭ-tur monebi-mur monebi-mini monebu-ntur				

Compound Tenses.

Perfect = I have been or was advised. monitus sum " es " est moniti sumus " estis " sunt	Perfect = I may have been advised. monitus sim " sis " sit moniti simus " sitis " sint	<i>Deponent Verbs of</i> Conj. II. are con- jugated as above, but have future in- finitive <i>active</i>, and full complement of participles. (See Cap. V. C.)
Plupf. = I had been advised. monitus eram " eras " erat moniti eramus " eratis " erant	Plupf. = I might have been advised. monitus essem " esses " esset moniti essemus " essetis " essent	<i>e.g.</i> verēri = to fear. Fut. Inf. veriturus esse <i>not</i> (veritum iri) = to be about to fear. Pres. Part. = verens = (a person, &c.) fearing.
Fut. Perf. = I shall have been advised. monitus ero " eris " erit moniti erimus " eritis " erunt		But Gerundive = verendus = to be feared.

Perfect.
monitus esse =
to have been advised.
Future.
monitum iri =
to be about to be
advised.
(See Cap. VIII.)

CONJUGATION III. (*Passive*).

rego, regi, rectus sum.

Simple Tenses.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present = I am ruled. rego-r regĕ-ris (re) regĭ-tur regi-mur regi-mini reg-untur	Present = { I may } be ruled. Let me } rega-r regā-ris (re) rega-tur rega-mur rega-mini rega-ntur	Present = be thou ruled. regĕ-re regĭ-mini Future = thou shalt be ruled. regĭ-tor regi-tor reg-untor	Present = reg-i = to be ruled. _____	None. _____ Gerundive. reg-endus one that 'is to' or 'must be ruled.' (See Cap. XI.) _____ Perfect. rect-us = Being or having been } ruled. _____
Impf. = I was (being) ruled. regeba-r regēba-ris (re) regeba-tur regeba-mur regeba-mini regeba-ntur	Impf. = I might be ruled. regĕre-r regērĕ-ris (re) regerĕ-tur regerĕ-mur regerĕ-mini regerĕ-ntur			
Fut. Simp. = I shall be ruled. rega-r regĕ-ris (re) rege-tur rege-mur rege-mini rege-ntur				

Compound Tenses.

Perfect =
I have been or was ruled.

rectus sum
" es
" est
recti sumus
" estis
" sunt

Plpf. = I had been ruled.

rectus eram
" eras
" erat
recti eramus
" eratis
" erant

Fut. Perf. =
I shall have been ruled.

rectus ero
" eris
" erit
recti erimus
" eritis
" erunt

Perfect =
I may have been ruled.

rectus sim
" sis
" sit
recti simus
" sitis
" sint

Plpf. =
I might have been ruled.

rectus essem
" esses
" esset
recti essemus
" essetis
" essent

Perfect.
rectus esse =
to have been ruled.

Future.
rectum iri =
to be about to be ruled.
(See Cap. VIII.)

Dependent Verbs of
Conj. III. are con-
jugated as above,
but have future in-
finitive *active*, and
full complement of
participles.
(See Cap. V. C.)

e.g. utor = to use.

Fut. Inf. usurus esse *not* (usum iri) =
to be about to use.

Pres. Part. = utens = (a person, &c.) using.

But Gerundive utendus = to be used.

CONJUGATION IV. (*Passive*).

audior, audiri, auditus sum.

Simple Tenses.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present = I am heard. audio-r audi-ris (re) audi-tur audi-mur audi-mini audi-ntur _____ Impf. = I am (being) heard. audieba-r audieba-ris (re) audieba-tur audieba-mur audieba-mini audieba-ntur _____ Fut. Simp. = I shall be heard. audia-r audie-ris (re) audie-tur audie-mur audie-mini audie-ntur _____	Present = { I may } be heard. { Let me } audia-r audia-ris (re) audia-tur audia-mur audia-mini audia-ntur _____ Impf. = I might be heard. audire-r audire-ris (re) audire-tur audire-mur audire-mini audire-ntur _____	Present. Be thou heard. audi-re audi-mini _____ Future. Thou shalt be heard. audi-tor audi-tor audi-untor _____	aud-iri = to be heard. _____	Present. None. _____ Gerundive. aud-iendus = one that 'is to' or 'must' be heard. (See Cap. XI.) _____ Perfect. audit-us = Being or having been } heard. _____

Compound Tenses.

Compound Tenses.		Dependent Verbs of Conj. IV. are con- jugated as above, but have future in- finite <i>active</i> , and <i>full</i> complement of participles. (See Cap. V. C.)
Perfect =	None.	
I have been or was heard. auditus sum " es " est auditi sumus " estis " sunt	Perfect = I may have been heard. auditus sum " sis " sit auditi sumus " sitis " sint	Perfect. auditus esse = to have been heard. Future. audium iri = to be about to be heard. (See Cap. VIII.)
Plpf. = I had been heard. auditus eram " eras " erat auditi eramus " eratis " erant	Plpf. = I might have been heard. auditus essem " esses " esset auditi essemus " essetis " essent	<i>e.g.</i> Partior = to distribute. Fut. Inf. partūrus esse <i>not</i> (partūrum iri) = to be about to distribute. Pres. Part. partiens = (a person, &c.) distributing. But Gerundive partiendus = <i>to be</i> distributed.
Fut. Perf. = I shall have been heard. auditus ero " eris " erit auditi erimus " eritis " erunt		

(D) CONJUGATION OF AN *IO* VERB (*active*).

facio, facere, feci, factum (do).

Present Stem = fac—

Perfect Stem = fec—

Supine Stem = fact—

*Present Stem Tenses.**Indicative.*

Present = I do.

fac-i-o

fac-is

fac-it

fac-i-mus

fac-itis

fac-i-unt

Impf. = I was doing.

fac-i-ebam

fac-i-ebas

fac-i-ebat

fac-i-ebamus

fac-i-ebatis

fac-i-ebant

Fut. Simp. = I shall do.

fac-i-am

fac-i-es

fac-i-et

fac-i-emus

fac-i-etis

fac-i-ent

*Subjunctive.*Present = { I may } do.
 { Let me }

fac-i-am

fac-i-as

fac-i-at

fac-i-amus

fac-i-atis

fac-i-ant

Impf. = I might do.

fac-ĕrem

fac-eres

fac-eret

fac-eremus

fac-eretis

fac-erent

Imperative.

Present = do thou.

fac

fac-ĭte

Future =

thou shalt do.

fac-ĭto

fac-ito

fac-itate

fac-i-unto

So

dic dicite = say

duc ducite = lead

Infinitive.

Present.

facĕre = to do

Participles.

Present.

fac-i-ens = (a person, &c.) doing.

Gerunds.

G. fac-i-endi = of doing.

D. fac-i-endo = to or for doing.

Acc. fac-i-endum = doing.

Abl. fac-i-endo = by doing.

N.B.—The above signify the mere *action* implied by the verb. (See Cap. XI.)

Perfect = I have done or I did. Perfect = I may have done.	None.	Perfect. fec-isse = to have done.	None.
fec-i fec-isti fec-it fec-imus fec-istis fec-erunt (ēre)			
Plupf. = I had done.	Plupf. = I might have done.		
fec-eram fec-eras fec-erat fec-eramus fec-eratis fec-erant	fec-issem fec-isses fec-isset fec-issemus fec-issetis fec-issent		
Fut. Perf. = I shall have done.			
fec-ero fec-eris fec-erit fec-erimus. fec-eritis fec-erint			
<i>Supine-Stem Tenses.</i>			
	Supines. fact-um = in order to do. fact-u = to be done. (See Cap. XII.) Future. fact-urus esse = to be about to do.	Future. fact-urus = about to do.	
		N.B.—The above may be used with any part of the verb 'sum,' <i>e.g.</i> , the present subjunctive, to make a future subjunctive. (See Cap. X.)	
The verb 'fio' is used as the <i>passive</i> of 'facio': it will be found later on among the irregular verbs.			

CONJUGATION OF AN *IO* VERB (*passive*).

Capior,

capi,

captus sum (am taken).

*Simple Tenses.**Indicative.*

Present = I am taken.

cap-i-or
 cap-ĕris (ĕrĕ)
 cap-itur
 cap-imur
 cap-imini
 cap-i-untur

Impf. = I was (being) taken.

cap-i-ebat
 cap-i-ebatis (rĕ)
 cap-i-ebatur
 cap-i-ebamur
 cap-i-ebamini
 cap-i-ebantur

Fut. Simp. = I shall be taken.

cap-i-ar
 cap-i-ĕris (rĕ)
 cap-i-etur
 cap-i-emur
 cap-i-emini
 cap-i-entur

*Subjunctive.*Present = { I may } be taken.
 { Let me }

cap-i-ar
 cap-i-aris (rĕ)
 cap-i-atur
 cap-i-amur
 cap-i-amini
 cap-i-antur

Impf. = I might be taken.

cap-ĕr
 cap-ĕris (rĕ)
 cap-ĕretur
 cap-ĕremur
 cap-ĕremini
 cap-ĕrentur

*Imperative.*Present =
 be thou taken.

cap-ĕre
 cap-imini

Future =
 thou shalt be taken.

cap-i-tor
 cap-i-tor
 cap-i-untor.

*Infinitive.*Present.
 cap-i =
 to be taken.*Participles.*Present.
 None.*Gerundive.*

cap-i-endus =
 one that 'is to' or
 'must be taken.'
 (See Cap. XI.).

Perfect.

cap-t-us =
 being
 or
 having been } taken.

Perfect = I { have been } taken.
 captus sum

es
 est
 capti sumus
 estis
 sunt

Plpf. = I had been taken.

captus eram
 eras
 erat
 capti eramus
 eratis
 erant

Fut. Perf. =

I shall have been taken.

captus ero
 eris
 erit
 capti erimus
 eritis
 erunt

Perfect =
 I may have been taken.

captus sim
 sis
 sit
 capti simus
 simis
 sint

Plpf. =
 I might have been taken.

captus essem
 esses
 esset
 capti essemus
 essetis
 essent

Perfect.
 captus esse =
 to have been
 taken.
 Future.
 captum iri =
 to be about to be
 taken.
 (See Cap. VIII.)

Deponent *IO* verbs
 are conjugated
 as above, but
 have future in-
 finitive *active*,
 and full comple-
 ment of parti-
 ciples.
 (See Cap. V., C.)

e.g. pati = to suffer.

Fut. Perf. passurus esse
not (passum iri) = to be about to
 suffer.

But note carefully that the verb
 morior, mori, mortuus sum = die
 makes future participle
 moriturus-a-um = about to die.
 (See also Cap. V. D, and Ap-
 pendix H.)

Perfect = I have been able. potu-i potu-isti potu-it potu-imus potu-istis potu-erunt (ēre)	Perfect = I may have been able. potu-erim potu-eris potu-erit potu-erimus potu-eritis potu-erint	Perfect. potu-isse = to have been able.	None.
Plpf. = I had been able. potu-eram potu-eras potu-erat potu-eramus potu-eratis potu-erant	Plpf. = I might have been able. potu-issem potu-isses potu-isset potu-issemus potu-issetis potu-issent	Queo = I can, and Nequeo = I cannot, are conjugated like 'eo' in the forms which are found, but many are wanting; they have no Imperative and no Gerunds. (See Cap. V., E 2.)	
Fut. Perf. = I shall have been able. potu-ero potu-eris potu-erit potu-erimus potu-eritis potu-erint			

(2) Völo, velle, völoi (wish, am willing).

Present Stems = völ— and vël— Perfect Stem = völu.

Present-Stem Tenses.

<i>Indicative.</i> Present = I wish.	<i>Subjunctive.</i> Present = { I may } wish. { Let me }	<i>Imperative.</i> None.	<i>Infinitive.</i> vel-le = to wish, or be willing.	<i>Participles.</i> vol-ens = willing. _____ <i>Gerunds.</i> G. vol-endi = of wishing. D. vol-endo = to or for wishing. Acc. vol-endum = wishing. Abl. vol-endo = by, &c., wishing. N.B. The above signify the mere action implied by the verb. (See Cap. XI.) _____
vol-o vis vult vol-ūmus vultis vol-unt _____ Impf. = I was wishing. vol-ebam vol-ebas vol-ebat vol-ebamus vol-ebatis vol-ebant _____ Fut. Simp. = I shall wish. vol-am vol-es vol-et vol-emus vol-etis vol-ent _____	Present = { I may } wish. { Let me } vel-im vel-is vel-it vel-imus vel-itis vel-int _____ Impf. = I might wish. vel-lem vel-les vel-let vel-lemus vel-letis vel-lent _____			

Perfect-Stem Tenses.

Perfect = I have wished.	Perfect = I may have wished.	None.	Perfect. volu-isse = to have wished.	None.
volu-i volu-isti volu-it volu-imus volu-istis volu-ērunt (ēre)	volu-erim volu-eris volu-erit volu-erimus volu-eritis volu-erint			
Plpf. = I had wished.	Plpf. = I might have wished.			
volu-eram volu-eras volu-erat volu-eramus volu-eratis volu-erant	volu-issem volu-isses volu-isset volu-issemus volu-issetis volu-issent			
Fut. Perf. = I shall have wished.				
volu-ero volu-eris volu-erit volu-erimus volu-eritis volu-erint				

The present participle—'volens,'
and that of 'nolo'—'nolens,'
have been put together with the meaning of our
'will he, will he,'
only in the *reverse* order
'nolens-volens.'
(See Cap. V., E 3.)

(3) nōlo (non vōlo), nōlle, nōlui (do not wish) am unwilling.

Present Stem = nōl —

Perfect Stem = nōlu —

*Present-Stem Tenses.**Indicative.*Present =
I am unwilling.nōl-o
nonvis
nonvult
nōl-imus
nonvultis
nōl-unt

Impf. =

I was unwilling.

nōl-ebam
nōl-ēbas
nōl-ēbat
nōl-ēbamus
nōl-ēbatis
nōl-ēbant

Fut. Simp. = I shall

be unwilling.

nōl-am
nōl-es
nōl-et
nōl-emus
nōl-etis
nōl-ent*Subjunctive.*Present = { I may } be unwilling.
 { Let me }nōl-im
nōl-is
nōl-it
nōl-imus
nōl-itis
nōl-int

Impf. = I might be unwilling.

nōl-irem
nōl-ēs
nōl-let
nōl-lemus
nōl-letis
nōl-lent*Superlative.*Present = be
thou unwillingnōl-i
nōl-ite

Future = thou

shalt be
unwilling.nōl-ito
nōl-ito
nōl-itote
nōl-unto*Infinitive.*Present.
nōl-le = to be
unwilling.*Participles.*

Present.

nōl-ens = unwilling.

Gerunds.

G. nōl-endi = of (being unwilling).
D. nōl-endo = to or for unwilling.
Acc. nōl-endum = being unwilling.
Abl. nōl-endo = by being unwilling.N.B. — The above signify the mere
action implied by the verb.

(See Cap. XI.)

Perfect-Stem Tenses.

Perfect = I have been unwilling.	Perfect = I may have been unwilling.	None.	Perfect. nolu-isse = to have been unwilling.	None.
nōlu-i nolu-isti nolu-it nolu-īmus nolu-istis nolu-ērunt (ēre)	I may have been unwilling. nolu-erim nolu-eris nolu-erit nolu-erimus nolu-eritis nolu-erint			
Plpf. = I had been unwilling. nolu-eram nolu-eras nolu-erat nolu-eramus nolu-eratis nolu-erant	I might have been unwilling. Plpf. = nolu-issem nolu-isses nolu-isset nolu-issemus nolu-issetis nolu-issent			
Fut. Perf. = I shall have been unwilling. nolu-ero nolu-eris nolu-erit nolu-erimus nolu-eritis nolu-erint				

The *imperative* of the above verb is used with the present infinitive of a verb in prohibitions, instead of 'ne' with subjunctive or imperative.
e.g. noli me culpare = do not blame me.
 For ne me culpaveris, &c.
 (See Cap. V., E 3.)

Perfect-Stem Tenses.

Perfect =	Perfect =	Perfect.	None.
I (have) preferred.	I may have preferred.	malu-isse = to have preferred.	None.
malu-i	malu-erim		
malu-isti	malu-eris		
malu-it	malu-erit		
malu-imus	malu-erimus		
malu-istis	malu-eritis		
malu-erunt (ēre)	malu-erint		
Plpf. = I had preferred	Plpf. =		
malu-eram	I might have preferred.		
malu-eras	malu-issem		
malu-erat	malu-isses		
malu-eramus	malu-isset		
malu-eratis	malu-issemus		
malu-erant	malu-issetis		
	malu-issent		
Fut. Perf. =			
I shall have preferred.			
malu-ero			
malu-eris			
malu-erit			
malu-erimus			
malu-eritis			
malu-erint			

The above verb is generally used with an *Infinitive*.

e.g. vivere quam mori malo =

I prefer living to dying, or, I had rather live than die.

With *nouns* it is better to use 'præfero' or 'antepono.'

e.g. divitiis honorem antepono =

I prefer honour to riches.

also expressed, honori divitias posthabeo

Lit. I hold riches after honour.

(See Cap. V, E 3.)

ACTIVE VOICE.

(5) fero, ferre, tuli, latum (bear, carry.)

Present Stem = fēr—

Perfect Stem = tūl—

Supine Stem = lāt—

<i>Present-Stem Tenses.</i>			
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Present = I bear.	Present = { I may } bear.	Present =	Present.
fer-o	Let me } fer-am	bear thou.	fer-re = to bear.
fer-s	fer-as	fer	—
fer-t	fer-at	fer-te	—
fer-imus	fer-amus	—	Gerunds.
fer-tis	fer-atis	Future =	G. fer-endi = of bearing.
fer-unt	fer-ant	thou shalt bear.	D. fer-endo = to or for bearing.
—	—	fer-to	Acc. fer-endum = bearing.
Impf. =	Impf. = I might bear.	fer-to	Abl. fer-endo = by bearing.
I was bearing.	fer-am	fer-tote	N.B.—The above signify the mere
fer-ebam	fer-res	fer-unto	action implied by the verb.
fer-ebas	fer-ret	—	(See Cap. XI.)
fer-ebat	fer-remus		
fer-ebamus	fer-retis		
fer-ebatis	fer-rent		
fer-ebant	—		
—			
Fut. Simp. =			
I shall bear.			
fer-am			
fer-es			
fer-et			
fer-emus			
fer-etis			
fer-ent			

Perfect = I have borne. tul-i tul-isti tul-ist tul-imus tul-istis tul-erunt (ère)	Perfect = I may have borne. tul-erim tul-eris tul-erit tul-erimus tul-eritis tul-erint	Perfect. tul-isse = to have borne.	None.
Plpf. = I had borne. tul-eram tul-eras tul-erat tul-eramus tul-eratis tul-erant	Plpf. = I might have borne. tul-issem tul-isses tul-isset tul-issemus tul-issetis tul-issent	Supines. lat-um = in order to bear. lat-u = to be borne. (See Cap. XII.) Future. lat-urus esse = to be about to bear.	Supine-Stem Tenses. Future. lat-urus = about to bear. N.B.—The above may be used with any part of the verb 'sum,' e.g., the present subjunctive to make a future subjunctive. (See Cap. V., E 4, and X.)
Fut. Perf. = I shall have borne. tul-ero tul-eris tul-erit tul-erimus tul-eritis tul-erint			

PASSIVE VOICE.

(5) teror, ferri, latus sum.

<i>Simple Tenses.</i>			
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Present = I am borne. fer-ror fer-ris (rĕ) fer-tur fer-imur fer-imini fer-untur	Present = { I may } be borne. { Let me } fer-ar fer-aris (rĕ) fer-atur fer-amur fer-amini fer-antur Impf. = I might be borne. fer-er fer-eris (rĕ) fer-retur fer-remur fer-remini fer-rentur	Present = be thou borne. fer-re fer-mini Future = thou shalt be borne. fer-tor fer-tor fer-untor	Present. None. Gerundive. fer-endus = one that 'is to' or 'must be borne.' (See Cap. XI.) Perfect. lat-us = Being or having been } borne.
Impf. = I was (being) borne. fer-ebar fer-ebaris (rĕ) fer-ebatur fer-ebamur fer-ebamini fer-ebantur			
Fut. Simp. = I shall be borne. fer-ar fer-ĕris (rĕ) fer-etur fer-emur fer-emini fer-entur			

Compound Tenses.

Perfect = I { have been } borne.
 I { was } borne.

latus sum
" es
" est
lati sumus
" estis
" sunt

Plpf. = I had been borne.

latus eram
" eras
" erat
lati eramus
" eratis
" erant

Fut. Perf. =

I shall have been borne.

latus ero
" eris
" erit
lati erimus
" eritis
" erunt

Perfect =
I may have been borne.

latus sim
" sis
" sit
lati simus
" sīs
" sint

Plpf. =
I might have been borne.

latus essem
" esses
" esset
lati essemus
" essetis
" essent

Perfect.

latus esse =
to have been borne.

Future.

latus iri =
to be about to be borne.
(See Cap. VIII.)

The compounds of
'fero' are conju-
gated like 'fero'
both in the *active*
and *passive* voice.

Compounds.

pr. ind. pf. ind. sup.

affero attuli allatum = bring to.
aufero abstuli ablatum = carry off.
confero contuli collatum = bring together.
effero extuli elatum = carry out.
inferno intuli illatum = carry into.
offero obtuli oblatum = present.
perfero pertuli perlatum = bear through.
praefero praetuli praelatum = prefer.
refero { retuli } relatum = bring back.
 { retuli }

(See Cap. V., E 4.)

Present Stems = ī, ě —			(6) eo, ire, i(v)i, itum (go). Perfect Stem = ī(v) —		Supine Stem = ĭt —
Indicative. Present = I go.			Subjunctive. Present = { I may } go. { Let me }		Imperative. Present = go thou.
e-o	e-am			i	
i-s	e-as			i-te	
i-t	e-at			_____	
i-mus	e-amus			Future =	
i-tis	e-atis			thou shalt go.	
e-unt	e-ant			i-to	
_____	_____			i-to	
Impf. = I was going.	Impf. = I might go.			i-toto	
i-bam	i-rein			e-unto	
i-bas	i-res			_____	
i-bat	i-ret				
i-bamus	i-remus				
i-batis	i-retis				
i-bant	i-rent				
_____	_____				
Fut. Simp. =					
I shall go.					
i-bo					
i-bis					
i-bit					
i-bimus					
i-bitis					
i-bunt					

			N.B.—This verb can be used in the passive <i>im-</i> <i>personally, e.g.,</i> <i>sic iitur</i> ad astra = this is the way to heaven; lit., thus <i>it is gone</i> to the stars.		
			Also with the gerundive, <i>e.g.,</i> mihi eundum est = I must go; lit., it is <i>to be</i> <i>gone</i> by me (dat.)		

			The above signify the mere <i>action</i> im- plied by the verb. (See Cap. XI.)		

</					

Perfect-Stem Tenses.

Perfect = I may have gone. i(v)-im i(v)-eris i(v)-erit i(v)-imus i(v)-istis i(v)-erunt (êre)	None.	Perfect. i(v) isse = to have gone.	None.
Plpf. = I had gone. i(v)-eram i(v)-eras i(v)-erat i(v)-eramus i(v)-eratis i(v)-erant			<i>Supine-Stem Tenses.</i> Future. ŷt-urus = about to go. (used with tenses of 'sum.')
Fut. Perf. = I shall have gone. i(v)-ero i(v)-eris i(v)-erit i(v)-erimus i(v)-eritis i(v)-erint			Compounds of 'eo.' (conjugated in <i>all</i> tenses like 'eo.')
		abeo adeo coeo exeo in(tro)eo { intereo } pereo } obeo praeo praetereo redeo subeo transeo	-ire -ii -itum = go away. -ire -ii -itum = approach. -ire -ii -itum = come together. -ire -ii -itum = go out. -ire -ii -itum = enter (upon). -ire -ii -itum = perish. -ire -ii -itum = meet (death). -ire -ii -itum = go before. -ire -ii -itum = pass by. -ire -ii -itum = return. -ire -ii -itum = go up to. -ire -ii -itum = cross.

(See Cap. V.
E 5.)

The above verb is used as the Passive of 'facio,' which has no Passive of the *present-stem* tenses (except ger. 'faciendus'); its *compounds* have; *e.g.* conficior = I am being completed.

Perfect.
factus esse =
to have been made.
Future.
factum iri =
to be about to be
made.
(See Cap. VIII.)

None.

Perfect =
I may have been made.
factus sim
" sis
" sit
facti simus
" sitis
" sint

Plpf. =
I might have been made.
factus essem
" esses
" esset
facti essemus
" essetis
" essent

Perfect =
I have been made.
factus sum
" es
" est
facti sumus
" estis
" sunt

Plpf. = I had been made.
factus eram
" eras
" erat
facti eramus
" eratis
" erant

Fut. Perf. =
I shall have been made.
factus ero
" eris
" erit
facti erimus
" eritis
" erunt

N.B. The *finite* parts of 'fio' take the *nominative* case after them, *e.g.* Numa factus est *rex* = Numa was made king. But the 'infinitive' takes *accusative* in 'oratio obliqua.' constat Numam factum esse *regem* = it is certain that Numa was made king. (See Cap. V., E 6.)

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

(1) Aio=I say or affirm.

Ind. Pres.	aio,	ais,	ait	—	—	aiunt
„ Impf.	aiebam,	aiebas,	aiebat,	aiebamus,	aiebatis,	aiebant
Subj. Pres	—	—	aiat	—	—	aiant
Pres. Part.	aiens					

(2) Inquam=I say.

Ind Pres.	inquam,	inquis,	inquit,	inquimus,	inquitis,	inquiunt
„ Impf.	—	—	inquirebat,	—	—	inquirebant
„ Fut. S.	—	inquies,	inquiet			
„ Perf.	—	inquisti,	inquit			
Imper.	—	inque,	inquito			

(3) Fari=to speak.

Ind. Pres.	—	faris,	fatur
„ Fut.	fabor	—	fabitur
Imper.	fare=speak thou		
Pres. Part.	fantem (acc.)	Perf. Part.	fatus=having spoken
Gerunds fandi, fando. Gerundive fandus.			

For other *defective* verbs, and their various uses, see Cap. V. *G*; and *F* for the *impersonal* verbs, and those used impersonally. Also Appendices *I*, *J*, *K* for list of verbs governing Dative, Genitive, and Ablative.

PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF VERBS IN COMMON USE.

CONJUGATION I. (-are, -avi, atum).

Juvo	-are	juvi	jutum	help
Lavo	-are	lavi	{ lavatum } lautum } { lotum }	wash
Frico	-are	fricui	frictum	rub
Seco	-are	secui	sectum	cut

CONJUGATION II. (-ēre, -ui, -itum).

Augeo	-ēre	auxi	auctum	increase (trans.)
Cāveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	beware
Censeo	-ēre	censui	censum	give an opinion
Doceo	-ēre	docui	doctum	teach
Fāveo	-ēre	fāvi	fautum	favour
Fōveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	cherish
Jubeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	order
Maneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	remain
Misceo	-ēre	miscui	{ mistum } { mixtum }	mix
Mōveo	-ēre	mōvi	motum	move
Mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	soothe

Prandeo	-ēre	prandi	pransum	lunch, dine
Rideo	-ēre	risi	risum	laugh
Sēdeo	-ēre	sēdi	sessum	sit
Suadeo	-ēre	suasi	suasum	advise
Teneo	-ēre	tenui	tentum	hold
Torqueo	-ēre	torsi	tortum	twist
Torreo	-ēre	torrui	tostum	parch
Urgeo	-ēre	ursi	ursum	urge
Vīdeo	-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	see
Vōveo	-ēre	vōvi	votum	vow

CONJUGATION III. (no *regular* form).

Ago	-ēre	ēgi	actum	do, drive
Cedo	-ēre	cessi	cessum	yield
Cerno	-ēre	crevi	cretum	see
Claudo	-ēre	clausi	clausum	shut
Cogo	-ēre	coēgi	coactum	compel
Colo	-ēre	colui	cultum	till
Coquo	-ēre	coxi	coctum	cook
Cresco	-ēre	crevi	cretum	increase (intr.)
Dico	-ēre	dixi	dictum	say, tell
Duco	-ēre	duxi	ductum	lead
Edo	-ēre	ēdi	esum	eat
Emo	-ēre	ēmi	emptum	buy
Figo	-ēre	fixi	fixum	fix
Fingo	-ēre	finxi	<i>fractum</i>	invent
Frango	-ēre	frēgi	fractum	break
Fundo	-ēre	fudi	fusum	pour
Gero	-ēre	gessi	gestum	{ carry (on) }
Gigno	-ēre	gēnui	genitum	{ wage (war) }
Lēgo	-ēre	lēgi	lectum	produce
Linquo	-ēre	liqui	lictum	read
Mergo	-ēre	mersi	mersum	leave
Mitto	-ēre	mīsi	missum	sink (trans.)
Nosco	-ēre	nōvi	notum	send
Pasco	-ēre	pāvi	pastum	know
Pingo	-ēre	pinxi	<i>pictum</i>	feed (trans.)
Pōno	-ēre	pōsui	positum	paint
Premo	-ēre	pressi	pressum	place
Rego	-ēre	rexī	rectum	press
Rumpo	-ēre	rūpi	ruptum	rule
Scribo	-ēre	scripsi	scriptum	burst
Solvo	-ēre	solvi	solutum	write
Spargo	-ēre	sparsi	sparsum	loose
Sperno	-ēre	sprēvi	spretum	scatter
Sterno	-ēre	strāvi	stratum	despise
Stringo	-ēre	strinxi	<i>strictum</i>	strew
Tego	-ēre	texi	tectum	draw (a sword)
Uro	-ēre	ussi	ustum	cover
Vinco	-ēre	vīci	victum	burn
Vivo	-ēre	vixi	victum	conquer
Volvo	-ēre	volvi	volutum	live
				roll

VERBS in -sco.

Abolesco -ĕre	abolevi	abolĭtum	grow out of use
Adolesco -ĕre	adolevi	adultum	grow up
Exolesco -ĕre	exolevi	exolĭtum	grow old
Coalesco -ĕre	coalui	coalĭtum	grow together
Concupisco -ĕre	concupĭvi	concupĭtum	desire
Convalesco -ĕre	convalui	convalĭtum	grow strong
Exardesco -ĕre	exarsi	exarsum	take fire
Inveterasco -ĕre	inveteravi	inveteratum	grow old
Quiesco -ĕre	quiĕvi	quiĕtum	become quiet
Œisco -ĕre	scĭvi	scĭtum	seek to know
Suesco -ĕre	suevi	suetum	grow accustomed

The following have no Supine, *or, neither Perfect nor Supine.*

Calesco -ĕre	calui	grow warm
Consenesco -ĕre	consenui	grow old
Glisco -ĕre	—	swell
Hisco -ĕre	—	gape
Ingravesco -ĕre	—	grow heavy
Juvenesco -ĕre	—	grow young
Maturesco -ĕre	maturui	grow ripe
Obmutesco -ĕre	obmutui	grow dumb
Repuerasco -ĕre	—	be a boy again
Viresco -ĕre	virui	grow green

The verb 'ferio-ire'=to strike (Conj. IV.) has *no* Perfect or Supine; 'perussi,' 'perussum' are often *given* as the Perfect and Supine, but these must be regarded rather as the principal parts of the verb percutio-ĕre, a compound of 'per' and 'quatio.'

IO VERBS.

Cupio -ĕre	cupĭvi	cupĭtum	desire
Fācio -ĕre	fēci	factum	make, do
Fōdio -ĕre	fōdi	fossum	dig
Fūgio -ĕre	fūgi	fugitum	flee
Jācio -ĕre	jēci	jactum	throw
Pario -ĕre	pēpēri	partum	bring forth
Quatio -ĕre	(quassi)	(quassum)	shake
(Concutio-ĕre	concussi	concussum	shake)
Rapio -ĕre	rapui	raptum	seize
Sapio -ĕre	sapĭvi	—	be wise
(-lacio -ĕre	(-lexi)	(-lectum)	entice } only in
(-specio -ĕre	(-spexi)	(-spectum)	see } comp.

REDUPLICATED PERFECTS OF CONJUGATION I., II. and III.

Do	dare	dēdi	dātum	give
Sto	stare	stēti	stātum	stand
Pendeo	-ēre	pēpendi	pensum	hang (intrans.)
Mordeo	-ēre	mōmordi	morsum	bite
Spondeo	-ēre	spōpondi	spōsum	vow
(Respondeo-ēre		respon-di	responsum	answer)
Tondeo	-ēre	tōtondi	tonsum	shave, shear
Cado	-ēre	cēcīdi	casum	fall
Caedo	-ēre	cēcīdi	caesum	cut, beat, slay
Cano	-ēre	cēcīni	cantum	sing
Curro	-ēre	cūcurri	cursum	run
Disco	-ēre	dīdīci	—	learn
Fallo	-ēre	fēfelli	falsum	deceive
Pello	-ēre	pēpūli	pulsum	drive
(Repello	-ēre	reppuli	repulsum	drive back)
Pendo	-ēre	pēpendi	pensum	hang (trans.)
Pergo	-ēre	perrexī	perrectum	proceed
Posco	-ēre	pōposci	—	demand
Pungo	-ēre	pūpūgi	punctum	prick
Surgo	-ēre	surrexi	surrectum	rise
Tango	-ēre	tētīgi	tactum	touch
Tendo	-ēre	tētēndi	tensum	stretch
Tundo	-ēre	tūtūdi	tunsum	thump

COMPOUNDS OF 'do.'

Abdo	-ēre	abdīdi	abdītum	hide
Addo	-ēre	addīdi	addītum	add
Condo	-ēre	condīdi	condītum	found, hide
Credo	-ēre	credīdi	credītum	believe, trust
Dedo	-ēre	dedīdi	dedītum	give up
Edo	-ēre	edīdi	editum	give forth, utter
Perdo	-ēre	perdīdi	perditum	lose, destroy
Prodo	-ēre	prodīdi	proditum	betray
Reddo	-ēre	reddīdi	reddītum	restore
Subdo	-ēre	subdīdi	subdītum	substitute
Trado	-ēre	tradīdi	tradītum	{ hand over or down }
Vendo	-ēre	vendīdi	vendītum	

N.B.—Circumdo=surround, venumdo=sell, pessumdo=ruin keep the original forms -dedi, -datum in perfect and supine.

Perfects and Supines in -ivi, -itum of Conjugation III.

Arcesso	-ēre	arcessīvi	arcessītum	send for
Capesso	-ēre	capessīvi	capessītum	take in hand
Facesso	-ēre	facessīvi	facessītum	perform
Incesso	-ēre	incessīvi	—	attack
Lacesso	-ēre	laccessīvi	laccessītum	provoke, harass
Quaero	-ēre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	seek
Tero	-ēre	trivi	tritum	rub

CONJUGATION IV. (-ire, -īvi, -itum).

Amicio	-ire	amicui (xi)	amictum	clothe
Aperio	-ire	aperui	apertum	open
Comperio	-ire	comperui	compertum	find
Fulcio	-ire	fulsi	furtum	prop
Haurio	-ire	hausi	haustum	drain
Operio	-ire	operui	opertum	cover
Reperio	-ire	repperi	reptum	discover
Saepio	-ire	saepsi	saeptum	hedge in
Salio	-ire	salui	(saltum)	leap
Sancio	-ire	sanxi	sanctum	hallow
Sarcio	-ire	sarsi	sartum	patch
Sentio	-ire	sensi	sensum	feel
Sepelio	-ire	sepelivi	sepultum	bury
Vēnio	-ire	vēni	ventum	come
Vincio	-ire	vinxi	vinctum	bind

DEPONENTS.

Those of Conj. I, II, and IV are *regular*, with the exception of those given in the following list :

Fateor	-eri	fassus sum	confess
Misereor	-eri	miser(i)tus sum	pit
Reor	-eri	ratus sum	think
Assentior	-iri	assensus sum	assent
Experior	-iri	expertus sum	try
Metior	-iri	ensus sum	measure
Oppetior	-iri	oppertus sum	wait for
Ordior	-iri	orsus sum	begin
Orior	-iri	ortus sum	rise

CONJUGATION III.

Am	} plector	-i	-plexus sum	embrace
Com				
Apiscor		-i	aptus sum	obtain
Expergiscor		-i	experrectus sum	wake up
Fruor		-i	fruitus sum	enjoy
Fungor		-i	functus sum	discharge
Irascor		-i	iratus sum	be angry
Labor		-i	lapsus sum	glide
Loquor		-i	locutus sum	speak
Morior		-i	mortuus sum	die
Nanciscor		-i	na(n)ctus sum	get
Nascor		-i	natus sum	be born
Nitor		-i	nisus or nixus sum	strive
Patiōr		-i	passus sum	suffer
Proficiscor		-i	profectus sum	set out
Queror		-i	questus sum	complain
Sequor		-i	secutus sum	follow
Ulciscor		-i	ultus sum	avenge
Utor		-i	usus sum	use

OTHER FORMS.

CONJUGATION I.

Crep -o, crep -are=creak	} <i>perfect</i> -ui	} <i>supine</i> -itum	
Cub -o, cub -are=lie down			
Dom -o, dom -are=tame			
Plic -o, plic -are=fold			
Son -o, son -are=sound			
Ton -o, ton -are=thunder			
Vet -o, vet -are=forbid			
Eneco -are	enecui	enectum	kill
Mico -are	micui	micatum	glitter

CONJUGATION II.

Del-eo,	del-ēre=destroy	} <i>perfect</i> -evi	} <i>supine</i> -etum
Fl -eo,	fl -ēre=weep		
N -eo,	n -ēre=spin		
pl -eo (<i>in comp</i>)	pl-ēre=fill		

The following have *no supine*.

Algeo,	algēre,	alsi	be cold
Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi { fut. pt. } arsurus	be on fire
Conniveo,	connivēre,	connixi	wink
Frigeo,	frigēre,	frixi	freeze (intrans.)
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi	shine
Haereo,	haerēre,	haesi { fut. pt. } haesurus	cling
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi	indulge
Luceo,	lucēre,	luxi	shine
Lugeo,	lugēre,	luxi	mourn
Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi	milk
Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi	wipe
Tumeo,	tumēre,	tumui	swell
Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi	swell

CONJUGATION III.

Affli -go	-gēre = smite down	} <i>Perfect.</i> -xi	} <i>Supine.</i> -ctum
Cin -go	-gēre = surround		
Exstin -guo	-guēre = quench		
Fle -cto	-ctēre = bend		
Flu -o	-ēre = flow		
Intelle -go	-gēre = understand		
Jun -go	-gēre = join		
Ne -cto	-ctēre = bind		
Negle -go	-gēre = neglect		
Pe -cto	-ctēre = comb		
Stru -o	-ēre = build up		
Tin -guo	-guēre = dye		
Tra -ho	-hēre = draw		
Un -guo	-guēre = anoint		
Ve -ho	-hēre = carry		

Car	-po	-pěre = pluck, card	} <i>Perfect.</i> -psi	} <i>Supine.</i> -ptum
Com	-o	-ěre = adorn		
Dem	-o	-ěre = take away		
Nu	-bo	-běre = marry		
Prom	-o	-ěre = bring out		
Re	-po	-pěre = creep		
Scal	-po	-pěre = scratch		
Scul	-po	-pěre = carve		
Ser	-po	-pěre = crawl		
Sum	-o	-ěre = take (up arms)	} (pf. and sup. ī).	} <i>Perfect.</i> -si
Tem	-no	-něre = despise		
Divī	-do	-děre = divide		
Lae	-do	-děre = hurt		
Lu	-do	-děre = play		
Plau	-do	-děre = applaud		
Ra	-do	-děre = scrape		
Ro	-do	-děre = gnaw		
Tru	-do	-děre = thrust		
Va	-do	-děre = go		
Al	-o	-ěre = nourish	} <i>Perfect.</i> -ui	} <i>Supine.</i> -tum
Consul	-o	-ěre = consult		
Occul	-o	-ěre = hide		
Ser	-o	-ěre = sew (cloth)		
Tex	-o	-ěre = weave		
Frem	-o	-ěre = bellow	} <i>Perfect.</i> -ui	} <i>Supine.</i> -ītum
Gem	-o	-ěre = groan		
Mol	-o	-ěre = grind		
Strep	-o	-ěre = roar		
Trem	-o	-ěre = tremble		
Vom	-o	-ěre = vomit		
Acū	-o	-ěre = sharpen	} <i>Perfect.</i> -i	} <i>Supine.</i> -tum (with ū)
Argu	-o	-ěre = prove		
Congru	-o (no Sup.)	-ěre = agree		
Exu	-o	-ěre = put off		
Imbu	-o	-ěre = tinge		
Indu	-o	-ěre = put on		
Lu	-o (sup.-ītum)	-ěre = atone		
Metu	-o (no Sup.)	-ěre = fear		
Minu	-o	-ěre = lessen		
Nu	-o (no Sup.)	-ěre = nod		
Ru	-o (sup.-ītum)	-ěre = rush		
Spu	-o	-ěre = spit		
Statu	-o	-ěre = set up		
Su	-o	-ěre = sew		
Tribu	-o	-ěre = assign		

VARIOUS VERBS OF CONJUGATION III.

not included in the foregoing lists.

Ango	-ěre	anxi	—	torment
Clango	-ěre	—	—	clash
Břbo	-ěre	bibi	bibitum	drink
Compesco	-ěre	compescui	—	restrain
Cudo	-ěre	cudi	cusum	stamp
Diligo	-ěre	dilexi	dilectum	love
Findo	-ěre	fidi	fissum	cleave
Friĝo	-ěre	fixi	frictum	roast
Ico	-ěre	ici	ictum	strike (a treaty)
Lino	-ěre	lěvi	lřtum	smear
Mando	-ěre	mandi	mansum	chew
Meto	-ěre	messui	messum	mow
Pando	-ěre	pandi	{ pausum } { passum }	spread
Percello	-ěre	percŭli	perculsum	strike
Pinso	-ěre	pinsui	pistum	pound
Prehendo	-ěre	prehendi	prehensum	grasp
Psallo	-ěre	psalli	—	play on strings
Scando	-ěre	scandi	scansum	climb
Scindo	-ěre	sciđi	sci-sum	tear
Sero	-ěre	sěvi	sřtum	sow (corn)
Sido	-ěre	sidi	—	settle
Sřno	-ěre	sřvi	sřtum	allow
Sugo	-ěre	suxi	suctum	such
Tollo	-ěre	sustuli	sublatum	raise
Viso	-ěre	visi	visum	visit
Vello	-ěre	{ velli } { vulsi }	vulsum	rend
Verro	-ěre	verri	versum	sweep
Verto	-ěre	veti	versum	turn

See also table of "Symphonious Verbs" in Cap. V., H.

FOR ADVERBS SEE CAP. XIII.

PREPOSITIONS.

Accusative.

ad=to (after verbs of motion, with
common nouns, and names of
persons)
adversus-um = towards (of *motion*
only)
ante=before
apud=near, among, at-the-house-of,
in-the-writings-of
circum=around, about (of *place* only)
circā=about (place, time, and number)
citer=about (time and number)
cis, citra=on this side of
contrā=against (adv. in reply to)
ergā=towards (of *feelings* only)
extrā=outside of
infrā=below
intrā=within
juxtā=next to
ob=over against, on-account-of
penes=in-the-power-of
per=through, by means of
pone=behind
post=after, behind
praeter=beside, past, except
prope=near
propter=near, on-account-of
secundum=next, along, according to
suprā=above
trans=across (in composition=
ultrā=beyond change)
versus-sum=towards (*after* case)

Ablative.

a, ab, abs=by (a *living* agent) from
(a common noun, and name of a
person or country)
absque=without (rare)
clam=without-the-knowledge-of
(rarely with accusative)
coram=in-the-presence-of
cum=with (*together* with, not *instru-*
ment)
de=down from, concerning, of
ex, e=out-of, from
palam=in-sight-of (also *adverb*)
prae=before, for (*i.e.* owing to), com-
pared with
pro=for (*i.e.* on-behalf-of)
sine=without
tenus=as-far-as (*after* case), also with
gen. pl.

The following take the
Accusative signifying *motion*,
Ablative „ *rest*.
in (acc.)=into, against
in (abl.)=in, on
sub (acc.)=up to, about (time)
sub (abl.)=under
super =over, upon
subter=under

For the various uses of Prepositions see Cap. XIV., also *M* and *N* in Appendix. And, for Prepositions compounded with Verbs, and inseparable particles, see Cap. XV.

CONJUNCTIONS.

<i>Co-ordinate.</i>		<i>Sub-ordinate.</i>
et -que atque ac	} = and	{ ut = in order that, so that ne = in order that not, lest ut non = so that not neve, neu = and that not, and lest quo = in order that (with comparatives)
aut vel -ve	} = either, or	
nec neque	} = neither, nor	{ quum (cum) = when, since quando = when ? quoniam = since quandoquidem = since siquidem = inasmuch as ut = when, how
sive, sive seu, seu utrum, an	} = whether, or	
sed at, ast autem ceterum verum-o	} = but	{ quod quia } = because
tamen attamen verum tamen nihilominus	} = however, never- theless	{ dum donec } = while, until, quoad } as long as
nam, namque enim, etenim enimvero	} = for, for indeed	{ quatenus } = how long quousque }
ergo itaque igitur	} = therefore, and so	{ antequam } = before that priusquam } postquam = after that
quare quamobrem quapropter quocirca	} = wherefore	{ quoties (iens) = as often as (simul (ac)) = as soon as
		{ si = if sin = but if ni, nisi = if not, unless si modo = if only dum (modo) = provided that

Co-ordinate.

etiam quoque item	}	=also
quomodo quemadmodum quam = than, how	}	=as, how
ut, uti velut, veluti sicut, sicuti ut-pote = as being	}	=as
quasi tanquam	}	=as if

Sub-ordinate.

etsi etiamsi quamquam quamvis tametsi utut licet	}	=although
quin quominus	}	but that, =whereby not
utinam O si	}	=would that !

For the various uses of Conjunctions see Cap. XVI.; and for Interjections Cap. XVII.

PART III.

EXERCISES ON PART I.

(WITH VOCABULARIES).

INTRODUCTION AND CAP. I. AND II.

NOUNS.

N.B.—The pupil should *read over and study* the Chapter or Section in Part I. to which the Exercises refer *before* doing each exercise.

EXERCISE I.—DECLENSION I.

Order—Nom : Other cases : Acc : Verb (see Cap. XXVI).

Bank = ripa-ae *f*.
Farmer = agricola-ae *m*.
Girl = puella-ae *f*.
Inhabitant = incola-ae *c*.
Island = insula-ae *f*.
(He, she, it) shows = monstrat.

Land = terra-ae *f*.
Poet = poeta-ae *m*.
Rose = rosa-ae *f*.
Sailor = nauta-ae *m*.
Wing = ala-ae *f*.
(They) show = monstrant.

1. The girl shows the rose to the farmer. 2. The inhabitant of the island shows the bank to the poet. 3. The poets show the wings to the girls. 4. The farmers show the banks of roses. 5. The sailor shows the bank of the island. 6. The sailors show the lands to the girls.

EXERCISE II.—DECLENSION II.

Egg = ovum-i <i>n</i> .	Gift = donum-i <i>n</i> .
Field = ager, agri <i>m</i> .	Gold = aurum-i <i>n</i> .
Finger = digitus-i <i>m</i> .	Knife = culter-ti <i>m</i> .
Friend = amicus-i <i>m</i> .	Smith = faber-bi <i>m</i> .
Garden = hortus-i <i>m</i> .	Sword = gladius-i <i>m</i> .

and = et, que (*after* second word).

1. The smith shows the gold to *(his) friend. 2. The friends show the gardens with *(their) fingers. 3. The smiths show the gifts. 4. The friend shows the egg with *(his) finger. 5. The smiths show the fields and gardens to *(their) friends. 6. The friends of the smiths show the knives and swords.

* Words in *brackets* are *not* to be translated.

EXERCISE III.—DECLENSION III.

Discourse = sermo-onis <i>m</i> .	Orator = orator-oris <i>m</i> .
Enemy = hostis is <i>c</i> .	Soldier = miles-itis <i>m</i> .
Head = caput-itis <i>n</i> .	Top = culmen-inis <i>n</i> .
Maid = virgo-inis <i>f</i> .	Tree = arbor-oris <i>f</i> .
Name = nomen-inis <i>n</i> .	Woman = mulier-eris <i>f</i> .

1. The soldier shows the head to the enemy. 2. The enemies show the heads to the soldiers. 3. The woman shows the trees to the maid. 4. The orators show the discourses to the women. 5. The maid shows the names of the orators to the woman. 6. The women show the tops of the trees to the maids.

EXERCISE IV.—DECLENSION IV.

Army = exercitus-ūs <i>m</i> .	Harbour = portus-ūs <i>m</i> .
Arrival = adventus-ūs <i>m</i> .	Horn = cornu-ūs <i>n</i> .
Course = cursus-ūs <i>m</i> .	Mother-in-law = socrus-ūs <i>f</i> .
Daughter-in-law = nurus-ūs <i>f</i> .	Needle = acus-ūs <i>f</i> .
Hand = manus-ūs <i>f</i> .	Old woman = anus-ūs <i>f</i> .

1. The old woman shows the arrival of the army. 2. The mothers-in-law show the needles to the daughters-in-law. 3. The old women show the harbours to the army. 4. The daughter-in-law shows the course of the armies. 5. The daughters-in-law show the horns to the old women. 6. He shows the horn with (his) hands.

EXERCISE V.—DECLENSION V.

Face = facies-ei <i>f</i> .	Line-of-battle = acies-ei <i>f</i> .
Faith = fides-ei <i>f</i> .	Plain = plainties-ei <i>f</i> .
Hope = spes-ei <i>f</i> .	Thing = res-ei <i>f</i> .

1. He shows the plain to the line-of-battle. 2. They show the faith and hope of the line-of-battle. 3. He shows the faces of the things. 4. They show the lines-of-battle.

CAP. III.

A and B.

ADJECTIVES WITH ABOVE NOUNS.

EXERCISE VI.

All = omnis-e.	Renowned = clarus-a-um.
Bold = audax-acis.	Short = brevis-e.
Clever = habilis-e.	Swift = celer-eris-ere.
Fierce = ferox-ocis.	True = verus-a-um.
Frequent = creber-bra-brum.	White = albus-a-um.
Red = ruber-bra-brum.	Wretched = miser-era-erum.

1. Wretched maids. 2. Bold farmers (*acc.*). 3. With-true discourses. 4. From-a-renowned soldier. 5. Of-all the girls. 6. By-frequent courses. 7. A white face. 8. To-clever smiths. 9. Of-white heads. 10. Red trees. 11. Fierce enemies. 12. By-swift arrival.

C.

COMPARISONS OF ABOVE.

EXERCISE VII.

(He, she, it) is = est. (They) are = sunt. Than = quam.

1. The women are more-wretched than the girls. 2. The orators are very-renowned. 3. The discourses are very-frequent. 4. The soldiers are very-bold. 5. The head is very-red. 6. The farmer is fiercer than the smith. 7. The courses are very-swift. 8. The name is more-renowned than the discourse.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

EXERCISE VIII. (see Part II).

Bad = malus-a-um.	Much, many = multus-a-um.
Doubtful = dubius-a-um.	Noble = nobilis-e.
Good = bonus-a-um.	Slandorous = maledicus-a-um.
Graceful = gracilis-e.	Small = parvus-a-um.
Great = magnus-a-um.	Useful = utilis-e.

1. The head is very-graceful. 2. The women are very-slandorous. 3. The orators are better than the poets. 4. The discourses are very-bad. 5. The harbours are very-great. 6. The needles are very-small. 7. The faces are very-many. 8. The faith is very-doubtful. 9. The orators are very-noble. 10. The things are very-useful.

D.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

EXERCISE IX. (see Part II).

Age = aetas-atīs <i>f</i> .	Pace = passus-ūs <i>m</i> .
Consul = consul-ulīs <i>m</i> .	Pupil = discipulus-i <i>m</i> .
Foot-soldier = pedes-itīs <i>m</i> .	Rank = ordo-inīs <i>m</i> .
Horse-soldier = eques-itīs <i>m</i> .	Year = annus-i <i>m</i> .

(He, she, it) was = erat. (They) were = erant.

1. Two hundred horse-soldiers. 2. Three thousand foot-soldiers. 3. (There) were a hundred and twenty scholars. 4. (There) were fifteen miles (Lit. fifteen thousand (of) paces). 5. He-is in-the thirteenth year of (his) age. 6. He was in-the-thousandth rank. 7. Marius was consul seven times. 8. Julius Caesar was consul in the six hundred and ninety third year after the building of Rome (*post Roman conditam*).

CAP. IV.

PRONGUNS.

A.

POSSESSIVES AND DEMONSTRATIVES.

EXERCISE X.

Book = liber-bri <i>m</i> .	Mountain = mons, montis <i>m</i> .
Brave = fortis-e	River = fluvius-i <i>m</i> .
Bridge = pons, pontis <i>m</i> .	Tongue = lingua-ae <i>f</i> .
High = altus-a-um.	Troublesome = molestus-a-um.
Letter = epistola-ae <i>f</i> .	Water = aqua-ae <i>f</i> .
Long = longus-a-um.	Yellow = flavus-a-um.

1. These are my books, those yours. 2. This letter is longer than that. 3. Those mountains are very-high. 4. That tongue of-yours is very-troublesome. 5. The water of this river is yellow. 6. Our soldiers were very-brave. 7. This pupil is good, that troublesome. 8. Of these bridges.

'SUM' WITH PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XI.

Glad = laetus-a-um.	Leisure = otium-i <i>n</i> .
Happy = felix-icis.	Nothing = nihil <i>n</i> .
Hurtful = noxius-a-um.	Play = ludus-i <i>m</i> .
Industrious = diligens-entis.	Pleasing = gratus-a-um.
Joy = gaudium-i <i>n</i> .	Sad = tristis-e.
Kind = benignus-a-um.	Time = tempus-ōris <i>n</i> .

1. *I* was glad: *you* (s.) were sad. 2. *We* shall be sad: *you* (pl.) will be happy. 3. Nothing is more pleasing to you (s.) than play. 4. The boy had been kind to me. 5. The times will have been pleasing to us. 6. To us has been great joy. 7. Boy, be kind to all. 8. Too-long (comp.) leisure has been hurtful to you (pl.): be very-industrious.

Exercises on the *other* pronouns will be placed *after* those on the Verbs.

CAP. V.

VERBS.

A-active.

CONJUGATION I.

EXERCISE XII.

Blame = culpo-are-avi-atum.	Praise = laudo-are-avi-atum.
Fight = pugno-are-avi-atum.	Sing = canto-are-avi-atum.
Give = do, dare, dedi, datum.	Stand = sto, stare, steti, statum.

1. He blames. 2. They were praising. 3. Ye will sing. 4. Thou hadst given. 5. We have fought. 6. Sing ye. 7. He would stand. 8. Let them fight. 9. Thou wilt have sung. 10. They would have stood.

CONJUGATION II.

EXERCISE XIII.

Frighten = terreo-ēre-ui-ītum.	Remain = maneo-ēre, mansi, mansum
Move = mōveo-ēre, mōvi, motum.	See = vīdeo-ēre, vīdi, vīsum.
Order = jubeo-ēre, jussi, jussum.	Teach = doceo-ēre, docui, doctum.

1. They frighten. 2. Thou wast teaching. 3. They will move. 4. Ye have ordered. 5. I had seen. 6. They will have moved. 7. Let us see. 8. Ye would frighten. 9. Thou mayst have ordered. 10. He would have remained.

CONJUGATION III.

EXERCISE XIV.

Conquer = vinco-ěre, vici, victum.	Send = mitto-ěre, misi, missum.
Lead = duco-ěre, duxi, ductum.	Speak, say = dico-ěre, dixi, dictum.
Live = vivo-ěre, vixi, victum.	Touch = tango-ěre, tetigi, tactum.

1. Ye conquer. 2. Thou wast leading. 3. We will live.
 4. He had sent. 5. They will have touched. 6. Speak thou:
 speak you. 7. May ye live! 8. He would lead. 9. I may
 have conquered. 10. Thou wouldst have touched.

CONJUGATION IV.

EXERCISE XV.

Bind = vincio-ire, vinxi, vinctum.	Feel = sentio-ire, sensi, sensum.
Bury = sepelio-ire, sepelivi, sepultum.	Leap = salio-ire, salui, saltum.
Come = venio-ire-vēni-ventum.	Soften = mollio-ire, ivi, itum.

1. They soften. 2. We were binding. 3. Thou wilt feel.
 4. Ye have leapt. 5. He had buried. 6. I shall have come.
 7. Bind ye. 8. Let them come. 9. Thou wouldst leap.
 10. We would have softened.

CAP. V.

B.

PASSIVES OF THE ABOVE VERBS.

CONJUGATION I.

EXERCISE XVI.

1. Thou art blamed. 2. Ye were being praised. 3. He
 will be blamed. 4. It has been given. 5. They (n. pl.) had
 been given. 6. Thou wilt have been blamed. 7. Be ye
 praised. 8. Let them be blamed. 9. They would be praised.
 10. He would have been blamed.

CONJUGATION II.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. They are frightened. 2. Thou wast being moved. He will be seen. 4. They have been commanded. 5. Thou will have been moved. 6. Be thou taught. 7. Let us be taught. 8. He might be taught. 9. Ye may have been moved. 10. Thou wouldst have been seen.

CONJUGATION III.

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Thou art conquered. 2. They were being led. 3. He will be touched. 4. They (neut. pl.) had been sent. 5. Thou mayst be conquered. 6. He might be led. 7. Thou shalt be sent. 8. They will have been touched. 9. He may have been sent. 10. They would have been led.

CONJUGATION IV.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. He is being bound. 2. Thou wast being softened. 3. It will be felt. 4. They have been buried. 5. He had been bound. 6. Be thou softened. 7. They may be buried. 8. It might be felt. 9. Thou mayst have been bound. 10. He would have been buried.

CAP. IV.

PRONOUNS (continued).

B and C.

EXERCISE XX.

Animal = animal-alis *n.*
 Love = amo-are-avi-atum.
 Man = vir, viri *m.*
 Mother = mater-tris *f.*
 Sister = soror-oris *f.*

{	His, her	=	{	suus v. ejus.	}
	its, their	=	{	eorum.	
	Himself, herself,	=	{	se	
	itself, themselves	=	{	ipse	

N.B.—If *no* case is given after a transitive verb, it governs *accusative* :
 others are given.

1. Caius is a very good man : he loves his mother. 2. Caius is my friend : I love his sister. 3. Cicero was very-renowned : his discourses are very-long. 4. The sister shows her letter to the mother. 5. The mother blames herself. 6. The mother herself blames the sister. 7. The orators praise themselves. 8. I praise the orators themselves. 9. The name itself is renowned. 10. The animal shows itself to me.

E and F.

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXI.

Beat = pulso-are-avi-atum.	Need = egeo-ēre-ui (abl.)
Envy = invideo-ēre-vidi-visum (dat.)	Slave = servus-i <i>m.</i>
Money = pecunia-ae <i>f.</i>	Stick = baculus-i <i>m.</i>
Is qui = he, or the man who.	Id quod = that, or the thing which.
Ii qui = those, or the men who.	Ea quae = the things which.
Not = non.	

1. *I* who blame you (s.) am your friend. 2. *He* who praise me are very renowned orators. 3. I praise those who love their mother. 4. The letter which you sent is very-long. 5. The slave whom he sent has not come. 6. The man whom you envy is not happy. 7. Who has come? The slave whose master sent him. 8. What stick is this? The stick with-which you beat the boy. 9. The things which you love are not useful. 10. The books which they sent are very-short. 11. I send the money which you need. 12. He who does not need money is very-happy.

G.

'QUI' WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.

EXERCISE XXII.

Choose = eligo-ēre-legi-lectum.	Set up = erigo-ēre-exi-ectum.
Leave = desero-ēre-erui-ertum.	Standard = signum-i <i>n.</i>
Place = locus-i <i>m.</i>	Task = labor-ōris <i>m.</i>

N.B.—Words in Italics are to be rendered by 'qui' with *subjunctive*.

1. Caesar sends the soldiers *to choose* a place. 2. Caesar sent the soldiers *to set up* the standard. 3. I praise you *for having taught* the boy. 4. I blamed you *for having struck* the slave. 5. I sent the boy *to give* the book to you. 6. There is nothing *for me to give* to you. 7. The soldiers are blamed *for leaving* the standards. 8. The soldiers will be blamed *for having left* the task. 9. This is a stick *for you to beat* the boy *with*. 10. I sent you *to beat* the slave. 11. There are (some) *who praise* Caius. 12. There were (some) *who blamed* Balbus.

H.

CORRELATIVES.

EXERCISE XXIII.

Beast = bestia-ae <i>c.</i>	Know = cognosco-ěre-ovi-ŭtum.
Before = antea.	Man = homo-inis <i>c.</i>
Build = aedifico-are-avi-atum.	Never = nunquam.
City = urbs, urbis <i>f.</i>	Opinion = sententia-ae <i>f.</i>
Ever (always) = semper.	Salute = saluto-are-avi-atum.
Ever (at any time) = unquam.	Storm = procella-ae <i>f.</i>

1. Of what sort is the city? (Such) as you have ever known it. 2. How great was the beast? As great as I had ever seen. 3. (There are) as many opinions as men. 4. As often as he sees me, he salutes me. 5. Hannibal was as renowned as Alexander. I saw the same storm as *you* (did). 7. I have never seen such a storm before. 8. He is building as great a city as possible. 9. This is the same as that. 10. You (*s.*) are such as you have ever been.

I and J.

OTHER PRONOMINALS.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Camp = castra-orum <i>n.</i>	Riches = divitiae-arum <i>f.</i>
Citizen = civis, civis <i>c.</i>	State = civitas-atis <i>f.</i>
Dance = salto-are-avi-atum.	Trojan = Trojanus-i <i>m.</i>
Greek = Graecus-i <i>m.</i>	Virtue = virtus-tutis <i>f.</i>
Have = habeo-ěre-ui-ŭtum.	Wise = sapiens-entis.
Honour = honor-oris <i>m.</i>	World = mundus-i <i>m.</i>

1. No state has ever had greater citizens. 2. The riches of the whole world are very great. 3. To which of the (two) boys did he give the book? To neither. 4. Of which army is (are) the camp the greater? 5. Achilles and Hector were very renowned; the one was a Greek, the other a Trojan. 6. One-man loves riches, another honours. 7. Some sing, others dance. 8. It-is one-thing to have, another to give. 9. To me alone (does) he give the money. 10. All the wisest (men) love virtue.

CAP. V.

VERBS (continued).

COMPOUNDS OF 'SUM.'

(see Part II under 'Sum').

EXERCISE XXV.

Be at the head of = *praesum, praeesse*.
 Be present at = *intersum, interesse*.
 Do good to = *prosum, prodesse*.
 Injure = *obsum, obesse*.
 Side with = *adsum, adesse*.
 (Compounds of 'sum' govern *dative*).

Aid = *auxilium-i n*.
 Battle = *praelium-i n*.
 Brave = *fortis-e*.
 { General } = *dux, ducis c*.
 { Leader } = *dux, ducis c*.
 Idleness = *segnities-ei f*.
 Imprudence = *imprudentia-ae f*.

1. A brave general is-at-the-head-of our army. 2. Your aid will-do-good-to the state. 3. The imprudence of the generals injured the soldiers. 4. I was present-at that battle. 5. The good (pl.) will always side-with the good. 6. Idleness has injured the boy. 7. *We* had-done-good to the state, *ye* had injured it. 8. I shall never have-sided-with the bad (pl).

C.

DEPONENT VERBS.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Exhort = *hortor-ari-atus sum*.
 Fear = *vereor-eri, veritus sum*.
 { Discharge } = *fungor-i, functus*
 { Perform } = *sum (abl.)*.
 Follow = *sequor-i, secutus sum*.
 Use = *utor-i, usus sum (abl.)*.
 Distribute = *partior-iri-itus sum*.

Duty = *officium-i n*.
 God = *Deus-i m*.
 Heavy = *gravis-e*.
 King = *rex, regis m*.
 Often = *saepe*.
 Queen = *regina-ae f*.
 Wisely = *sapienter*.

et, et = both, and.

1. The general was often exhorting his soldiers. 2. We shall always fear both king and queen. 3. Always fear God, (my) boy. 4. The duty which we discharge is very-heavy. 5. Let us always discharge our duties. 6. He does not use the money which he has. 7. The knives which you use are very-heavy. 8. We always followed nature. 9. Soldiers, follow him who is the best leader. 10. I will distribute the money which you sent. 11. Hercules performed very-heavy tasks. 12. Use time wisely, (my) friends.

D.

IO VERBS.

EXERCISE XXVII.

Do, make = facio-ěre, feci, factum.	Bravely = fortiter.
Flee = fugio-ěre, fugi, fugitum.	Fellow-soldier = commilito-onis <i>m.</i>
Take = capio-ěre, cepi, captum.	Pain = dolor-oris <i>m.</i>
Throw = jacio-ěre, jeci, jactum.	Stone = lapis-idis <i>m.</i>
Die = morior, mori, mortuus sum.	Weapon = telum-i <i>n.</i>
Suffer = patior, pati, passus sum.	Wrong = pravus-a-um.

1. (We) all do many-things (n. pl.) which are wrong.
 2. The enemy (pl.) had taken the city; our soldiers were fleeing. 3. The boy was throwing many stones. 4. The weapons which were being thrown frightened the soldiers.
 5. The stone which had been thrown touched the general.
 6. Let us die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 7. My friend will suffer great pain. 8. The pains which we have suffered were very-great.

E.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Be able = possum, posse, potui.	Go away = abeo, ire, ii, itum.
Be willing, wish = volo, velle, vólui.	Return = redeo, ire, ii, itum.
Be unwilling = nolo, nolle, nólui.	Become, be made = fio, fieri, factus sum
Prefer = malo, malle, málui.	Soon = mox.
Bring, carry = fero, ferre, tuli, latum.	Tribune = tribunus-i <i>m.</i>

1. We shall be able to conquer the enemy. 2. We wished to go away: we preferred to remain. 3. The soldiers had been unwilling to follow their general. 4. Do not (lit. be unwilling to) blame the boy. 5. I had rather (lit. I prefer to) die than flee. 6. The slaves will bring many gifts. 7. The soldiers used the weapons which had been brought. 8. The general and the soldier were going away: the general will return. 9. You will soon become the greatest of all the citizens. 10. Gracchus was made a tribune.

F.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

EXERCISE XXIX.

Repent = pœnitēt-ēre-uit.	Commit = committo-ēre-misi-missum.
Be ashamed = pudet-ēre-uit.	Daughter = filia-ae <i>f</i> .
Be vexed = piget-ēre-uit.	Dead = factum-i <i>n</i> .
Be weary = taedet-ēre, pertaesum est.	Father = pater, patris <i>m</i> .
Be allowed (may) = licet-ēre-uit.	Life = vita-ae <i>f</i> .
Behove (ought) = oportet-ēre-uit.	Read = lēgo-ēre, lēgi, lectum.
Be to the interest of = interest.	Son = filius-i <i>m</i> .
Concern = rēfert.	Well = bene.

1. The father is vexed at what (lit. of the things which) (his) son has done. 2. The mother was ashamed of (her) daughter's letter. 3. You will repent of the deed which you have yourself committed. 4. I had become-weary of this most wretched life. 5. May you repent of your deed! 6. *We* may go away: *you* (pl.) ought to remain. 7. I might have had the money. 8. You (s.) ought to have read the book which I sent. 9. It is to the interest of all to live well. 10. It concerns you (s.) to know this.

VERBS USED IMPERSONALLY.

EXERCISE. XXX.

Arrive = pervenio-ire-veni-ventum.	Rise = surgo-ēre, surrexi, surrectum.
Daily =	Run = curro-ēre, cucurri, cursum.
quotidie, indies (of increase or decrease).	Sense = sensus-ūs <i>m</i> .
Eleventh = undecimus-a-um.	Spare =
Envy = invideo-ēre-vidi-visum (dat.)	parco-ēre, peperci, parsum (dat.)
Favour = faveo-ēre, favi, fautum (dat.)	Strength = vis, vim, vi.
Fifth = quintus-a-um.	Too much = nimium.
Greatly =	Utmost = summus-a-um.
magnopere, magis (more), maxime.	Vice = vitium-i <i>n</i> .
Hour = hora-ae <i>f</i> .	Vigorously = strenue.
Indulge = indulgeo-ēre-si (dat.)	Wont = soleo-ēre, solitus sum.
Resist = resisto-ēre-stiti-stitum (dat.)	

N.B.—Words in Italics are to be rendered *impersonally*.

1. *They run* with all their might (lit. with-utmost strength). *We-used-to-rise* (impf.) daily at five o'clock (lit. at the fifth hour). 3. *We-arrived* at eleven o'clock. 4. Your joy *is greatly envied*. 5. Your friends *used-to-be-favoured* more than (your) sons. 6. Our enemies *will be spared*. 7. The senses *are* often *wont* to be indulged too much. 8. Vices *can* always be vigorously resisted.

CAP. VI.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

EXERCISE XXXI.

Advise, warn = moneo-ēre-ni-ītum.	Kindly = benigne.
Ask = rogo-are-avi-atum.	Literature = literae-arum <i>f</i> .
Attempt, try = conor-ari-atus sum.	Place, pitch =
Beg, pray = oro-are-avi-atum.	pono-ēre, posui, positum.
Chastise = castigo-are-avi-atum.	Receive =
Command =	accipio-ēre, accepi, acceptum.
impero-are-avi-atum (dat.)	Roman = Romanus-i. <i>m</i> .
Devote-oneself-to =	Strive = nitor-i { <i>nixus</i> } sum.
incumbo-ēre-cubui-cubitum (dat.)	

1. It is more pleasing to give than to receive. 2. It is pleasing to be kindly saluted. 3. I come to give, not to receive. 4. I came to salute you (s.). 5. I ask you to send the book. 6. Cicero begged his friend not to chastise the slave. 7. I will advise the boy to devote-himself-to literature. 8. I warned you not to receive the money. 9. The general commands the soldiers to fight bravely. 10. Caesar ordered the soldiers to pitch the camp. 11. Hannibal was striving to conquer the Romans. 12. Catilina had attempted to injure the state.

CAPS. VII AND VIII.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

Certain = certus-a-um, constat.	Overthrow = everto-ēre-ti-sum.
Finish = conficio-ēre-feci-fectum.	Plain = manifestus-a-um.
Gaul = Gallus-i <i>m</i> .	Pretend = simulo-are-avi-atum.
Hear = audio-ire-ivi-ītum.	Promise = polliceor-ēri, pollicitus sum
Hope = spero-are-avi-atum.	Rome = Roma-ae <i>f</i> .
Hostage = obses-īdis <i>c</i> .	Troy = Troja-ae <i>f</i> .
Laugh = rideo-ēre-risi-risum.	Work = opus-ēris <i>n</i> .

1. It is certain that the boy is better than the girl. 2. It is plain that you have not seen the man. 3. It is certain that you (s.) are laughing. 4. It was certain that you were laughing. 5. It is certain that you laughed. 6. My friend

says that he will try to do me good. 7. Caius is my friend: I know that he will not injure me. 8. You pretend to love me. 9. The girl hopes to come quickly. 10. The Gauls promised to give hostages to Caesar. 11. The slave said that he would finish the work. 12. It is a good thing that the boy should devote-himself to literature. 13. I hear that the books which you read do not do you good. 14. He told me that the man whom he had sent had gone away. 15. We have heard that Troy was overthrown. 16. I believe that Rome will be overthrown. (Use *both* constructions).

CAP. IX.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, &C.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

Begin = in eo-ire-ii-itur.	Rejoice = gaudeo-ēre, gavīsus sum.
Burst-in = irrumpo-ēre-rupi-ruptum.	Sail = velum-i <i>n</i> .
Call-back = revoco-are-avi-atum.	Seize = arripio-ēre-rīpui-reptum.
Draw-up =	Shield = scutum-i <i>n</i> .
instruo-ēre-struxi-structum.	Ship = navis-is <i>f</i> .
Help = adjuvo-are-juvi-jutum.	Slay = occīdo-ēre-cīdi-cīsum.
Hold out = protendo-ēre-tendi-tensum.	Spear = hasta-ae <i>f</i> .
Lead back = reduco-ēre-duxi-ductum.	Spring = ver, veris <i>n</i> .
Leap down = desilio-ire-silui-sultum.	Strength = vires, virium <i>f</i> .
Lie down =	Swallow = hirundo-inis <i>f</i> .
recumbo-ēre-cubui-cubitum.	Wear out = conficio-ēre-feci-sectum.
Master (of a slave) = dominus-i <i>m</i> .	Weep = fleo-ēre-evi-etum.
Nature = natura-ae <i>f</i> .	Wend one's way = iter (itineris) facere.

N.B.—Words in Italics are to be rendered *participially*.

1. *Spring beginning*, the swallows return. 2. *The Gauls being-about-to-burst-in*, the whole city was greatly frightened. 3. *The enemy being conquered*, the army rejoiced greatly. 4. *With nature to help us*, our strength will return. 5. *When the ships were going to set (make) sail* (pl.), the women were all weeping. 6. *Having taken the city*, Cæsar led back the army. 7. The slaves, *being worn out* with the work, lay down. (8) Hannibal *pitched (his) camp*, and drew up the line-of-battle. 9. The leader *bound the men and slew (them) all*. 10. *Seizing a shield*, the soldier lept down. 11. The soldiers wended their way, *holding-out* (their) spears. 12. *As the slave was going away*, (his) master called (him) back.

CAP. XI.

§§ 1—6.

GERUND AND PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Admire = admiror-ari-atus sum.	Master (of a pupil) = magister-ti <i>m</i> .
Among = inter (acc.).	Play = ludo-ĕre, lusi, lusum.
Apple = pomum-i <i>n</i> .	Prone = pronus-a-um.
Delight = delecto-are-avi-atum.	Steal = furor-avi-atus sum.
Early (in the morning) = mane.	Sun = sol, solis <i>m</i> .
Fond = studiosus-a-um.	Throw away = abjicio-ĕre-eci-ectum.
Golden = aureus-a-um.	To = ad (acc.).
Learn = disco-ĕre, didici.	Undertaking = inceptum-i <i>n</i> .
Lose = amitto-ĕre-misi-misum.	Work = laboro-are-avi-atum.

1. Singing delights many. 2. The boy went away singing.
 3. These boys are more prone to play than work. 4. Hippomenes threw away a golden apple while (among) running.
 5. This girl is fonder of dancing than singing. 6. I am fond of a girl dancing. 7. The master devotes-himself to teaching, the boy to learning. 8. It is better to live by working than stealing. 9. He is fond of rising early. 10. Rising early does not do good to all. 11. I admire the rising sun. 12. Losing time will always injure undertakings.

§§ 7—11.

GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION.

EXERCISE XXXV.

Author = auctor-oris <i>m</i> .	Shepherd = pastor-oris <i>m</i> .
Butcher = lanus-i <i>m</i> .	Shorten = minuo-ĕre-ui-utum.
Flay = deglubo-ĕre-glupsi-gluptum.	Spend = impendo-ĕre-di-sum.
Flower = flos, floris <i>m</i> .	Take care of, have done = curo-are-avi-atum.
In = in (abl.).	Wool = lana-ae <i>f</i> .
Pluck, card = carpo-ĕre-psi-ptum.	Writer = scriptor-oris <i>m</i> .
Shear = tondeo-ĕre, totondi, tonsum.	
Sheep = ovis, ovis <i>c</i> .	

1. The girl is fond of plucking flowers. 2. The woman will-devote-herself to carding wool. 3. The master sent the slave to finish the work. 4. Many soldiers were slain in taking that city. 5. The shepherd was spending (his) time (in) shearing sheep, the butcher in flaying (them). 6. By-reading the best authors you will yourself become a good writer. 7. The general had the line of battle drawn up. 8. I am not (equal) to shearing the sheep. 9. All these things (*n. pl.*) tend to shorten life. 10. The father gave money to the boy to spend.

§§ 12—20.

GERUNDIVE = MUST.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Burden = onus-ëris *n.*

Carry = porto-are-avi-atum.

Christian = Christianus-i.

Enemy = inimicus-i *m.*Evening = vesper-eris *m.*

Neglect = negligo-ëre-glexi-glectum.

Obey = pareo-ëre-ui (dat.).

Pardon = ignosco-ëre-novi-notum.

Parent = parens-entis *c.* (dat.).

Punish = punio-ire-ivi-utum.

Stratagem = dolus-i *m.*

Take by storm = per vim expugnare.

1. We-must always live well. 2. We-must obey (our) parents.
 3. We-must love (our) parents. 4. A Christian must love (his) enemies.
 5. A Christian must always pardon (his) enemies.
 6. The father says that *he* must himself punish the boy. 7. The soldiers had to fight in the water. 8. I shall have to go away in-the-evening. 9. It is certain that Troy is not to be taken by storm.
 10. The city is to be taken by stratagem. 11. Boys who wish to play must finish (their) work. 12. Slaves who neglect (their) work must be punished. 13. I have to carry this burden. 14. Vices must always be vigorously resisted.

CAP. XII.

SUPINES.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

By = a, ab (before 'h' or a vowel).

Difficult = difficilis-e.

Draw water = aquor-ari-atus sum.

Easy = facilis-e.

Forage = pabulor-ari-atus sum.

Go to bed = cubitum eo, ire, ivi, itum.

Heir = heres-edis *c.*Honey = mel, mellis *n.*

Hunt = venor-ari-atus sum.

Legion = legio-onis *f.*Maid-servant = ancilla-ae *f.*Messenger = nuntius-i *m.*

Seek = peto-ëre-ivi-utum.

Seventh = septimus-a-um.

Surround =

circumfundo-ëre-fudi-fusum.

Sweet = dulcis-e.

Taste = gusto-are-avi-atum.

Understand = intelligo-ëre-exi-ectum.

Watch = vigilo-are-avi-atum.

Wood = silva-ae *f.*N.B.—Words in Italics are to be rendered by *supines*.

1. The general sent messengers *to seek* aid. 2. Some were watching, others had gone *to bed*. 3. The heir will go *a-hunting* in the woods. 4. The maid servant, whom I sent *to draw water*, has not returned. 5. The seventh legion, which had been sent *to forage*, was surrounded by the enemy (pl.) 6. Honey is sweet *to the taste*. 7. The burden is difficult *to carry*. 8. The books which you sent are not easy *to understand*.

CAP. XIII.

ADVERBS.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Act = ago-ēre, egi, actum.
 Boldly = audacter (*adj.* audax-acis).
 Deliberately = ultro.
 Expectation = expectatio-onis *f.*
 Gladly = lubenter (*adj.* lubens-entis).
 Greek = Danaus-i *m.*
 Increase = cresco-ēre, crevi, cretum.
 Lazy = ignavus-a-um.
 Offer = offero, offerre, obtuli, oblatum.

Prudently =
 prudenter (*adj.* prudens-entis).
 Quickly = celeriter (*adj.* celer-eis-ere).
 Sin = pecco-are-avi-atum.
 Strangely = mire (*adj.* mirus-a-um).
 Trust, believe = credo-ēre-didi-ditum.
 Yesterday = heri.
 Yet = tamen.

1. The Gauls fought with more boldness than prudence (lit. more boldly than more prudently). 2. You have acted very-prudently, my son. 3. You arrived sooner than I expected (lit. more quickly (than) my expectation). 4. They promised to finish the work as quickly as possible. 5. The boy acts very-strangely: at one time he laughs, at another weeps. 6. Balbus said that he blamed not only Caius, but also his slaves. 7. The slave is too lazy to carry the burden. 8. You were the first to conquer the Gauls. 9. We-must not trust the Greeks even when they bring gifts. 10. He spends money daily: yet daily his riches increase. 11. Sinon had deliberately offered himself to the Trojans as-they-came. 12. I was very-glad to see you yesterday. 13. They were very-sorry when they heard it. 14. One-man sins openly, another secretly.

CAP. XIV.

PREPOSITIONS.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

Bird = avis-is *f.*
 Certain = quidam, quaedam, quoddam.
 Country = patria-ae *f.*
 Cross = transeo-ire-ii-itum.
 Despise = sperno-ēre, sprevi, spretum.
 Dine = coeno-are, coenatus = having dined.
 Enter = intro-are-avi-atum.
 Flatter = blandior-iri, blanditus sum (dat.).
 Graceful = decōrus-a-um.
 Javelin = jaculum-i *n.*

Mercy = misericordia-ae *f.*
 Natural-affection = pietas-atis *f.*
 Pleasure = voluptas-atis *f.*
 Region = regio-onis *f.*
 River = flumen-inis *n.*
 Serve = servio-ire-ii-itum (dat.).
 Show = adhibeo-ēre-ui-ŕtum.
 Sky = cœlum-i *n.*
 To-morrow = cras.
 War = bellum-i *n.*

1. What have you heard about the war? 2. About 10,000 men crossed the river. 3. Pleasure must be despised in-comparison with virtue. 4. Troy was taken by the Greeks;

they entered it by a stratagem. 5. It is a sweet and graceful (act) to die for (one's) country. 6. The soldiers could not see the sky for the javelins. 7. In spring certain birds return into these regions; in winter they remain in other lands. 8. We read many strange-things (n. pl.) in the poets. 9. We must show mercy in-the-case-of Balbus. 10. Æneas showed great natural-affection toward his father. 11. The father said with joy that his own son had slain the beast with a spear. 12. I hope to dine with Caius to-morrow. 13. We can live (impers.) without pleasure. 14. He serves the king without flattering him.

CAP. XV.

VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS, &C.

EXERCISE XL.

Bless = benefacio-ěre-feci-factum (dat.).	Rampart = vallum-i <i>n</i> .
Bespatter = adspargo-ěre-si-sum (acc. and dat.).	Rock = scopulus-i <i>m</i> .
Cap = pileus-i <i>m</i> .	Satisfy = satisfacio-ěre-feci-factum (dat.).
Companion = comes-itis <i>c</i> .	Senate = senatus-ūs <i>m</i> .
Cost = sto, stare, steti, statum (dat. and abl.).	Speak-evil-of = maledico-ěre-xi-ctum (dat.).
Eagle = aquila-ae <i>f</i> .	Surround = circumdo-dare-dedi-datum (acc. and dat.).
Hold-after = posthabeo-ěre-ui-itum	Threaten = minor-ari-atus sum (acc. and dat.).
Make-head-of = praeficio-ěre-feci-fectum (acc. & dat.).	Throw-in-the-way-of = objicio-ěre-jeci-jectum (acc. & dat.).
Mistake = error-oris <i>m</i> .	Thrust from = detrudo-ěre-si-sum (acc. and abl.).
People = plebs-plebis <i>f</i> .	Torture = cruciatus-ūs <i>m</i> .
Place-on = impono-ěre-posui-positum (acc. and dat.).	Work = opera-ae <i>f</i> .
Praise = laus, laudis <i>f</i> .	
Prefer = antepono-ěre-posui-positum (acc. and dat.).	

1. Triton and his companions thrust the ships from the rock. 2. The eagle placed the cap on the head of Tarquinius. 3. Our (men) threw themselves in the way of the enemy. 4. The senate made a farmer head of the whole state. 5. May heaven (the gods) bless you! (s.) 6. Myself I always satisfy, (my) masters never. 7. A Christian must not speak evil of others. 8. *The orator bespattered the people with praises. 9. *These boys prefer play to work (or, hold work after play). 10. *The general surrounded the camp with a rampart. 11. The master threatened the slave with all (sorts of) tortures. 12. That mistake of yours has cost me a great (sum of) money.

* Sentences 8, 9, 10 should be rendered in *two* ways.

CAP. XVI.

CONJUNCTIONS.

A.
Antequam, &c.B.
Dum, &c.C.
Etsi, &c.

EXERCISE XLI.

Abandon = omitto-ĕre-misi-missum.

Boat = cymba-ae *f*.

Burn = incendo-ĕre-di-sum.

Danger = periculum-i *n*.Day = dies-ei (*m. f.* in *s.*; *m. only* in *pl.*)Death = mors, mortis *f*.

Escape = effugio-ĕre-fūgi-fugitum.

Exposed = obnoxius-a-um.

Forces = copiae-arum *f*.Go out of = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} excedo-ĕre-cessi-cessum. \\ exeo-ire-ii-itum. \end{array} \right.$ Into = in (*acc.*).

Justly = jute.

Miser = avarus-i *m*.

Poor = pauper-ĕris.

Raise (forces) = comparo-are-avi-atum

Really = reverā.

Rich = dives-ĭtis.

Rule = rego-ĕre, rexi, rectum.

Safe = salvus-a-um.

Summon = convoco-are-avi-atum.

Wage (war) = gero-ĕre, gessi, gestum.

1. We must raise forces before we wage war. 2. The general burnt his boats after he had crossed the river. 3. The consul summoned the senate the fifth day after he arrived in the city (lit. after the fifth day that it was arrived into the city). 4. While we live, we must not abandon hope. 5. We will remain in the city until you return. 6. All-men will fear the king, as long as he rules justly. 7. Although you are very rich, you are unwilling to give money to the poor. 8. However rich you are, you will not be able to escape death. 9. The miser, rich as he is, is not really happy. 10. Although you (*pl.*) have been exposed to great danger, yet will you be safe, as long as you go out of the city before the enemy arrive.

D.

QUIN AND QUOMINUS.

EXERCISE XLII.

About to die = moriturus-a-um.

Attack = impetus-ūs *m*.

Common = communis-e.

Deny = nego-are-avi-atum.

Fall = cado-ĕre-cecidi-casum.

Grieve = doleo-ĕre-ui.

Health = salus-ūtis *f*.

Here = hic.

Leave undone =

praetermitto-ĕre-misi-missum.

Object = recuso-are-avi-atum.

Please = placeo-ĕre-ui-atum (*dat.*).

Prevent = obsto-stare-stīti-stitum.

Restrain = retineo-ĕre-ui-tentum.

Scipio = Scipio-onis *m*.

Some time or other = aliquando.

Stay = commoror-ari-atus sum.

Think = puto-are-avi-atum.

Wicked = improbus-a-um.

1. It cannot be denied that death is common to all. 2. No one doubts that we all shall (are about to) die some time or

other. 3. No one is so wicked as not to grieve for the death of his parents. 4. Our (men) could not be restrained from making an attack upon (in c. acc.) the enemy. 5. He never sees me without saluting me. 6. I left nothing undone to please my parents. 7. I cannot but think that we shall (are about to) conquer the enemy. 8. It cannot be that we shall not escape danger. 9. I do not object to Caius staying here. 10. There is no one but prefers health to riches. 11. Who is there that does not admire Scipio? 12. You very nearly fell into the river. 13. What prevents us from crossing the river? 14. It was owing to you (lit. it stood through you) that the enemy did not take the city.

E.

QUUM, &c.

F.

SI, &c.

EXERCISE XLIII.

Arise = coorior-iri-ortus sum.
 Break (a law) = violo-are-avi-atum.
 Cast out = ejicio-ěre-jeci-jectum.
 Dog = canis-is c.
 Drive out = expello-ěre-pŭli-pulsum.
 Elude = fallo-ěre-fefelli-falsum.
 Exile = exilium-i n.
 Explain = expono-ěre-posui-positum.
 Few = paucus-a-um.

Guard = custos-ōdis c.
 Hold, deliver = habeo-ěre-ui-atum.
 (levy) (speech)
 Kingdom = regnum-i n.
 Law = lex, lēgis f.
 Levy = delectus-ŭs m.
 Rule = regula-ae f.
 Speech = oratio-onis f.
 Spend (life) = ago-ěre, egi, actum.
 Winter = hiems-emis f.

1. When the consul was holding a levy, a great storm arose. 2. In breaking one law you break all. 3. It is (there-are) three years since you (came to) stay here. 4. I rejoice that Cæsar has conquered the Gauls. 9. The slaves, having fled out of the city, eluded their pursuers (those following). 6. Since *you* are unwilling to go away in winter, *I* will remain here. 7. When will the levy be held? In a few days. 8. The king, when driven-out-of-the kingdom, fled to the Gauls. 9. The Gauls eluded both the guards and the dogs. 10. If you had obeyed the laws, you would not have been cast-out-of the city. 11. If you had delivered that speech, I should not be spending my life in exile. 12. You will understand the rule, when I have explained it to you.

N.B.—Exercises on *G* 'seu-seu', and 'utrum-an' will be placed further on under 'Latin Questions.'

H.

UT— UT NON— NE— QUO—

EXERCISE XLIV.

Appear = videor-ēri, visus sum.
 Behold = aspicio-ēre-spexi-spectrum.
 Careless = incuriosus-a-um.
 Forgetful = obliviosus-a-um.
 Hold = teneo-ēre, tenui, tentum.
 House = domus-ūs *f*.
 Living = vivus-a-um.
 Love = diligo-ēre-lexi-lectum.
 Memory = memoria-ae *f*.
 Mourn for = lugeo-ēre, luli.

Night = nox, noctis *f*. (by night = noctu).
 Paint = pingo-ēre, pinxi, pictum.
 Quietly = tacite.
 Robber = latro-ōnis *m*.
 Shower = imber-bris *m*.
 Stand-one's-ground =
 insisto-ēre-stīti-stitum.
 Torment = torqueo-ēre, torsi, tortum.
 With firmness = firmiter.

1. As we were going out of the city, a heavy shower fell.
 2. When Achilles heard that his friend was dead, he wept greatly. 3. Live well that, when dying, you may have (hold) the memory of a life well spent. 4. Scipio was so kind that all the citizens loved him when living, (and) mourned-for (him when) dead. 5. We will surround the camp with a rampart, that the enemy may not be able to enter it. 6. The Romans stood-their-ground with such firmness that the enemy could not burst in. 7. The woman painted herself that she might appear more pleasing. 8. They went out of the city by night that no one might behold them. 9. The robbers entered the house so quietly that no one heard them. 10. The king surrounded himself with guards that he might never be slain. 11. This boy is so diligent that he never neglects (his) work. 12. You were so careless as to neglect (your) task. 13. The slave was so forgetful as not to bring the book. 14. Do not chastise the slave, and torment yourself: I fear it will do good to neither.

I.

VARIOUS RENDERINGS OF 'THAT.'

EXERCISE XLV.

Almost = fere, paene
 Carthage = Carthago-īnis *f*.
 Congratulate = gratulor-ari-atus sum
 (dat.).
 Desire = cupio-ēre-īvi-itum.
 Especially = praeipue.
 Flood = obruo-ēre-ui-utum.
 Forget = obliviscor-i, oblitus sum
 (acc. or gen.).

Former = pristinus-a-um.
 Migrate = migro-are-avi-atum.
 Sometimes = interdum.
 Soul = animus-i *m*.
 Stand-by = adsum-esse-fui (dat.).
 Succeed = succedo-ēre-cessi-cessum.
 Valour = virtus-ūtis *f*.
 World = orbis-is *m*.
 Wretch = scelestus-i *m*.

1. Pythagoras used-to-say that the souls of men migrated into other bodies after death. 2. Cato warned the Romans that

Carthage must be destroyed. 3. The general exhorted the soldiers that they should not forget their former valour. 4. I do not deny that the bad sometimes appear happy. 5. I deny that the man who sins can be really happy. 6. How comes it (*Quí fit*) that almost all of us desire what we have not (got)? 7. I have brought this gift that you may know that I have not forgotten you. 8. So great was the storm that the fields were almost flooded. 9. I fear that that wretch will escape death. 10. I fear that (my) friends will not stand by me in (time of) danger. 11. We have heard that Alexander the (that) Great wept because there were not other worlds to conquer. 12. The speech that you delivered especially pleased me. 13. I rejoice that you have succeeded so well (lit. that the thing has succeeded so well to you). 14. I congratulate you on having escaped danger.

CAP. XVIII.

PECULIARITIES OF CASES.

EXERCISE XLVI.

Address = *alloquor-i-locutus sum*.

Afterwards = *postea*.

Aristides = *Aristides-is m.*

Call = *appello-are-avi-atum*.

Care = *cura-ae f.*

Cast-in-one's-teeth =

objicio-ěre-jeci-jectum (acc. & dat.).

Conceal = *celo-are-avi-atum*.

Contrary = *contrarius-a-um*.

Deprive = *privo-are-avi-atum*.

Horse = *equus-equi m.*

Lion = *leo-ōnis m.*

Lioness = *lea, or leaena-ae f.*

Oak = *quercus-ūs f.*

Rest = *quies-ētis f.*

Revolt = *defectio-ōnis f.*

Smile (a) = *risus-ūs m.*

Smile (to) = *subrideo-ěre-si-sum*.

Terror = *terror-ōris m.*

There is need = *opus est (abl.).*

Throw-into-confusion =

perturbo-are-avi-atum.

Walk = *ambulo-are-avi-atum*.

Worthy = *dignus-a-um*.

Either-or = *aut-aut*. Neither-nor = *neque-neque*.

1. I hear that the lion and lioness have been slain. 2. It cannot be denied that virtue and vice are contrary to one another (lit. among themselves). 3. While you and I were walking in the garden, a bird was singing on the top of the oak. 4. After Venus had addressed him, Jupiter smiled a sweet smile. 5. The people called Aristides 'the Just,' but afterwards cast the name in his teeth. 6. I warned the general not to conceal the revolt from the king. 7. The very terror inspired-by-the-horses had

thrown the Roman ranks into confusion. 8. It is the-duty-of-a-Christian to value virtue at a high price, money at a low. 9. I will give you as much money as I have. 10. These boys are a great care to their parents. 11. Do not deprive others of the honours of which they are worthy. 12. The more we have, the more we wish to have. 13. Neither you nor I need rest. 14. There will be need of either you or me.

CAP. XIX.

REST— MOTION— TIME— SPACE—

EXERCISE XLVII.

<i>Names of persons.</i>	<i>Names of places.</i>	<i>Other words.</i>
Alexander-dri.	Brundusium-i.	Agility = agilitas-tatis <i>f</i> .
Apollo-ñis.	Delos-i.	Augur = augur-ŭris <i>m</i> .
Atheniensis-e.	Ephesus-i.	Badly = male.
Brutus-i.	Faesulae-arum.	Be born = nascor-i, natus sum.
Caesar-ŭis.	Falerii-orum.	Be burnt down = deflagro-are-avi-atum.
Cincas-ae.	Gades-ium.	Be distant from = absum-esse-fui.
Codrus-i.	Graecia-ae.	Bring forth = pario-ĕre, pepĕri, partum.
Diana-ae.	Mantua-ae.	But = sed (1), autem (2).
Fabius-i.	Massilia-ae.	Country seat = villa-ae <i>f</i> .
Fabricius-i.	(Marseilles).	Defend = defendo-ĕre-di-sum.
Homĕrus-i.	Miletus-i.	Flourish = floreo-ĕre-ui.
Horatius-i.	Numidia-ae.	For = nam (1), enim (2).
Jugurtha-ae.	Patavium i.	Luxuriant = laetus-a-um.
Jupiter, Jĕvis.	Sulmo-ōnis.	Oracle = oraculum-i <i>n</i> .
Latona-ae.	Tarentum-i.	Pastures = pascua-orum (<i>n</i>).
Livius-i.	Tibur-ŭris.	Set out = proficiscor-i, profectus sum.
Milo-ōnis.	Venusia-ac.	Several = aliquot (indecl.).
Ovidius-i.		Temple = templum-i <i>n</i> .
Pynhus-i.		There = ibi, illic.
Pythagoras-ae.		Wall = murus-i <i>m</i> .
Saturnus-i.		
Virgilius-i.		

1. Virgil was born at Mantua, Horace at Venusia, Ovid at Sulmo, Livy at Patavium. 2. Renowned augurs flourished at Faesulae. 3. At Falerii the pastures were very luxuriant. 4. There-were at Miletus an oracle and temple of Apollo. 5. At Gades the women were renowned for (their) agility. 6. We have heard that Latona fled to Delos, and there brought forth Apollo and Diana. 7. Virgil set out for Greece from Brundusium. 8. Milo was sent into exile at Marseilles (see Cap. XIV., 5, i.); for he was badly defended. 9. *We* will go into

the country, but *you* must remain at home. 10. My friend was on service with me for many years. 11. Alexander the Great was born at Ephesus the same night that the temple of Diana was burnt down. 12. Cæsar built a wall nineteen miles long, sixteen feet high.

CAP. XX.

APPOSITION.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

N.B.—Proper nouns in the following exercises will be found in the preceding vocabulary.

Dictator = dictator-ōris <i>m.</i>	Physician = medicus-i <i>m.</i>
Dictatorship = dictatura-ae <i>f.</i>	Poison = venenum-i <i>n.</i>
Garment = vestis-is <i>f.</i>	Put on = induo-ēre-ui-utum.
Hold (an office) =	Sprung from = oitus-a-um.
fungor-i, functus sum (abl.).	Worship = colo-ēre, colui, cultum.
Office = officium-i <i>n.</i>	

1. Cineas, the physician of Pyrrhus, wished to slay him with poison. 2. We worship thee, O Jupiter, sprung-from Saturn. 3. We all admire Fabricius, the Roman dictator. 4. The soldier put on the garments of Codrus, king of the Athenians. 5. The Romans favoured Jugurtha, king of Numidia. 6. Fabius held the dictatorship, that great office.

CAP. XXV.

LATIN QUESTIONS.

SINGLE AND DOUBLE.—DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

(See also Cap. XVI., *G.*)

EXERCISE XLIX.

Be further from = longius-abetes.	Poisoner = veneficus-i <i>m.</i>
Condemn = damno-are-avi-atum.	Poor = inops, inōpis.
Dwell = habito-are-avi-atum.	Post = statio-ōnis <i>f.</i>
Earth = terra-ae <i>f.</i>	Safe = incolumis-e.
Enjoy = fruor-i { fructus } sum (abl.).	Tiller-of-the-soil = colōnus-i <i>m.</i>
Moon = luna-ae <i>f.</i>	Why? = cur?
Not to know = nescio-ire-ii. ¹	Worth while = operae pretium.
Ought = debeo-ēre-ui-utum.	Yet = adhuc.

1. Have the slaves whom I sent to the city returned yet?
2. Ought not those who have fought for (their) country to enjoy

the greatest honours? 3. Do you think it is worth while asking a miser for money? 4. Can any one deny that the sun is further from the earth than the moon? 5. Why have the soldiers gone out of the camp? 6 I-do-not-know why the general orders the soldiers to leave their posts. 7. Tell me how much money you have given the slave. 8. I asked whether the poisoner had been condemned to death (lit. of the head). 9. I doubt whether any poet was ever greater than Homer. 10. Do the citizens value money or virtue the more highly? 11. I should like (wish) to know whether you prefer to dwell at Rome or Tarentum. 12. We must all die, whether we are kings or poor tillers-of-the-soil. 13. Will you go with me to Rome, or not? I shall go myself, whether you are willing or unwilling. 14. I will ask whether our army has returned safe, or not.

CAP. XXVIII.

ROMAN TIME AND MONEY.

EXERCISE L.

NAMES OF MONTHS.

Januarius— Martius— Maius— Julius— September— November— } *G*—bris.
 Februarius— Aprilis— Junius— Augustus— October— December— }
 Calends = Kalendae-arum : Nones = Nonae-arum : Ides = Idus-uum,

Across = trans. (acc.).

After = post (acc.).

Conspiracy = conjuratio-ōnis *f*.

Deceive = decipio-ēre-cepi-ceptum.

Dedicate = dedico-are-avi-atum.

Detect = detego-ēre-exi-ectum.

Festival = festum-i *n*.

Keep (a festival) = ago-ēre, egi, actum.

Leave = relinquo-ēre-liqui-lictum.

Love = Amor-ōris *m*.

Most-people = plerique.

Part = pars, partis *f*.

Race = certamen-īnis *n*.

Sea = mare-is *m*.

Society = sodalitas-tatis *f*.

The other = alter, altera, alterum.

Two-horse-chariot (of) = bijūgus-a-um.

Uncle = avunculus-i *m*.

Various = varius-a-um.

Victor = victor-ōris *m*.

1. On New Year's day most-people rejoice greatly. 2. On the 14th of February the festival of Love used-to-be-kept. 3. Cæsar was slain by Brutus on the 15th of March. 4. On the 1st of April boys deceive boys. 5. On the 29th of May the king

was led back into (his) kingdom. 6. On the 5th of November a conspiracy for (of) destroying the state was detected by the king. 7. On Christmas Day friends give gifts to one another (lit. among themselves). 8. How much did you buy those books of yours for? Twelve sesterces apiece. 9. After the two-horse-chariot race the victor gave 800,000 sesterces to the poor. 10. Certain rich-men, who dwell across the sea, have left when dying more than 400,000,000 sesterces. 11. The son was made heir to the whole estate. 12. The father made (his) son heir to half the estate: the other part he left to be distributed among (into) various societies. 13. On the 5th of June my uncle died at the age of eighty (see Cap. XIX., *D.*) I myself was born on the 8th. 14. I finished this book on the 16th of June; and I dedicate it to (into) the memory of that most excellent (best) *man*.

VOCABULARIES TO EXERCISES PART III.

A.

Abandon = omitto-ěre-misi-misum.
 About = { circum, circa, circiter (acc.).
 { de (see Cap. XIV., a).
 About-to-die = moriturus-a-um.
 Achilles = Achilles-is *m*.
 Across = trans (acc.).
 Act (to) = ago-ěre, egi, actum.
 Address (to) = alloquor-i-locutus sum.
 Admire = admiror-ari-atus sum.
 Advise = moneo-ěre-ui-itum.
 After = post (acc.).
 Afterwards = postea.
 Age = aetas-tātis *f*.
 Agility = agilitas-tātis *f*.
 Aid = auxilium-i *n*.
 Alexander = Alexander-dri *m*.
 All = omnis-e.
 Almost = fere, pœne.
 Alone = solus-a-um.
 Among = inter (acc.).
 And = et, que (*after* second word).
 Animal = animal-alis *n*.
 Any = ullus-a-um.
 Anyone = quisquam, quaequam, quidquam
 Apollo = Apollo-ŋis *m*.
 Apple = pomum-i *n*.
 Arise = { surgo-ěre, surrexi, surrectum.
 { coorior-oriri-ortus sum.
 Aristides = Aristides-is *m*.
 Army = exercitus-ŭs *m*.
 Around = circum, circa (acc.).
 Arrival = adventus-ŭs *m*.
 Arrive = { ad
 { per } vĕnio-ire-vĕni-ventum.
 Ask = rogo-are-avi-atum.
 Athenian = Atheniensis-e.
 Attempt (to) = conor-ari-atus sum.
 Augur = augur-ŭris *m*.
 Author = auctor-ōris *m*.

B.

Bad = malus-a-um, pejor, pessimus.
 Badly = male.
 Bank = ripa-ae *f*.
 Battle = prœlium-i *n*.
 Be able = possum, posse, potui.
 Be allowed = licet, licĕre, licuit.
 Be ashamed = pudet, pudĕre, puduit.
 Be at the head of = praesum-esse-fui.
 Be born = nascor-i, natus sum.
 Be burnt down = deflagro-are-avi-atum.
 Be distant from = absum-esse-fui.
 Be present at = intersum-esse-fui.
 Be to the interest of = interest-esse.
 Be unwilling = nolo, nolle, nŏlui.
 Be vexed = piget, pigĕre, piguit.
 Be weary = taedet, taedĕre, taeduit.
 Be willing = volo, velle, vŏlui.
 Be wont = soleo-ěre, solĭtus sum.
 Beat = pulso-are-avi-atum.
 Become, be made = fio, fieri, factus sum.
 Before (adv.) = antea.
 Before (prep.) = ante (acc.).
 Be further from = longius abesse.
 Beg = oro-are-avi-atum.
 Begin = in eo-ire-ii-itum.
 Behold = aspicio-ěre-spexi-spectum.
 Behove = oportet-ěre-oportuit.
 Believe = credo-ere-didi-ditum (dat.).
 Bespatter = aspergo-ěre-spersi-spersum.
 Bind = vincio-ire, vinxi, vinctum.
 Bird = avis-is *f*.
 Blame (to) = culpo-are-avi-atum.
 Bless (in word) = benedico-ěre-dixi-dictum.
 Bless (in deed) = benefacio-ěre-feci-factum.
 Boat = cymba-ae *f*.
 Bold = audax-acis.
 Boldly = audacter.
 Book = liber-bri *m*.
 Brave = fortis-e.

Bravely = fortiter.
 Break (a law) = violo-are-avi-atum.
 Bridge = pons, pontis *m*.
 Bring = afferro, afferre, attuli, allatum.
 Bring forth = pario-ēre, peperī, partum.
 Brundisium = Brundisium-i *n*.
 Brutus = Brutus-i.
 Build = aedifico-are-avi-atum.
 Burden (a) = onus-ēris *n*.
 Burn (to) = incendo-ēre-di-sum.
 Burst in = irrumpo-ēre-rupi-ruptum.
 Bury = sepelio-ire-ivi, sepultum.
 But = sed, at, ast, autem.
 Butcher (a) = lanius-i *m*.
 By = a, ab (before 'h' or a vowel), abs.

C.

Caesar = Caesar-āris *m*.
 Call = appello are-avi-atum.
 Call back = revoco-are-avi-atum.
 Camp = castra-orum *n*.
 Cap = pileus-i *m*.
 Care (a) = cura-ae *f*.
 Careless = incuriosus-a-um.
 Carry = porto-are-avi-atum.
 Carthage = Carthago-īnis *f*.
 Cast-in-one's-teeth =
 obijcio-ēre-jeci-jectum.
 Cast out = ejicio-ēre-jeci-jectum.
 Certain (a) = quidam, quaedam, quoddam.
 Certain (sure) = certus-a-um.
 Chastise = castigo-are-avi-atum.
 Choose = eligo-ēre-lēgi-lectum.
 Christian = Christianus-i *m*.
 Cineas = Cineas-ae *m*.
 Citizen = civis, civis *c*.
 City = urbs, urbis *f*.
 Clever = habilis-e.
 Codrus = Codrus-i *m*.
 Command = impero-are-avi-atum (dat.).
 Come = venio-ire, veni, ventum.
 Commit = committo-ēre-missi-missum.
 Common = communis *e*.
 Companion = comes-itis *c*.
 Conceal = celo-are-avi-atum.
 Concerns (it) = refert.
 Condemn = damno-are-avi-atum.
 Congratulate = gratulor-ari-atus sum (dat.).
 Conquer = vinco-ēre, vici, victum.
 Conspiracy = conjuratio-ōnis *f*.

Consul = consul-ūlis *m*.
 Contrary = contrarius-a-um.
 Cost = sto, stare, stēti, statum.
 Country (not town) = rus, ruris *n*.
 Country (native-land) = patria-ae *f*.
 Country-seat = villa-ae *f*.
 Course = cursus-ūs *m*.
 Cross (to) = transeo-ire-ii-atum.

D.

Daily = quotidie, indies (of increase or decrease).
 Dance (to) = salto-are-avi-atum.
 Danger = periculum-i *n*.
 Daughter = filia-ae *f*.
 Daughter-in-law = nurus-ūs *f*.
 Day = dies-ei *m*. and *f*., *s*.; *m*. pl.
 Death = mors-mortis *f*.
 Deceive = decipio-ēre-cepi-ceptum.
 Dedicate = dedico-are-avi-atum.
 Deed = factum-i *n*.
 Defend = defendo-ēre-di-sum.
 Delight (to) = delecto-are-avi-atum.
 Deliver (a speech) = habeo-ēre-ui-atum.
 Delos = Delos-i *f*.
 Deny = nego-are-avi-atum.
 Deprive = privo-are-avi-atum.
 Desire (to) = cupio-ēre-ivi-atum.
 Despise = sperno-ēre, sprevi, spretum.
 Detect = detego-ēre-texi-tectum.
 Devote-oneself-to =
 incumbo-ēre-cubui-cubitum.
 Diana = Diana-ae *f*.
 Dictator = dictator-oris *m*.
 Dictatorship = dictatura-ae *f*.
 Die = morior-i, mortuus sum.
 Difficult = difficilis-e.
 Dine = ceno-are; cœnatus = having dined.
 Discharge = fungor-i, functus sum (abl.).
 Discourse (a) = sermo-ōnis *m*.
 Distribute = partior-iri-itus sum.
 Do = facio-ēre, feci, factum.
 Dog = canis-is *c*.
 Do good to = prosum, prodesse, profui.
 Doubtful = dubius-a-um.
 Draw-up = instruo-ēre-struxi-structum.
 Draw water = aquor-ari-atus sum.
 Drive out = expello-ēre-pūli-pulsum.
 Duty = officium-i *n*.
 Dwell = habito-are-avi-atum.

M.

Maid = *virgo-ŭis f.*
 Maid servant = *ancilla-ae f.*
 Make = *facio-ĕre, feci, factum.*
 Make head of =
 prae-ficio-ĕre-feci-factum (acc. and dat.)
 Man (not a *beast*) = *homo-ŭis c.*
 Man (not a *woman*) = *vir, vīri m.*
 Mantua = *Mantua-ae f.*
 Marseilles = *Massilia ae f.*
 Master (of a *slave*) = *dominus-i m.*
 Master (of a *pupil*) = *magister-tri m.*
 Memory = *memoria-ae f.*
 Mercy = *misericordia-ae f.*
 Messenger = *nuntius-i m.*
 Migrate = *migro-are-avi-atum.*
 Miletus = *Miletus-i f.*
 Milo = *Milo-ŭis n.*
 Miser = *avarus-i m.*
 Mistake = *error-ŭis m.*
 Money = *pecunia-ae f.*
 Moon = *luna-ae f.*
 Most-people = *plerique.*
 Mother = *mater, matris f.*
 Mother-in-law = *socrus-ŭs f.*
 Mountain = *mons, montis n.*
 Mourn-for = *lugeo-ĕre, luxi.*
 Move = *mōveo-ĕre, mōvi, motum.*
 Much, many = *multus-a-um.*
 My, mine = *meus-a-um.*

N.

Name = *nomen-ŭis n.*
 Nature = *natura-ae f.*
 Natural affection = *pietas-tatis f.*
 Need (to) = *egeo-ĕre-ui (abl.).*
 Needle = *acus-ŭs f.*
 Neglect (to) = *negligo-ĕre-glexi-glectum.*
 Never = *nunquam.*
 Night = *nox, noctis f.*
 Noble = *nobilis-e.*
 Nothing = *nihil (indecl.).*
 Not-to-know = *nescio-ire-ii.*
 Numidia = *Numidia-ae f.*

O.

Oak = *quercus-ŭs f.*
 Obey = *parco-ĕre-ui (dat.).*

Object = *recuso-are-avi-atum.*
 Offer = *offeo-ferre, obtuli, oblatum.*
 Office = *officium-i n.*
 Old woman = *anus-ŭs f.*
 One = *unus-a-um*
 (one, another = *alius, alius).*
 Opinion = *sententia-ae f.*
 Oracle = *oraculum-i n.*
 Orator = *orator-ŭis m.*
 Order (to) = *jubeo-ĕre, jussi, jussum.*
 Other = *alius-a-ud.*
 Ought = *debeo-ĕre-ui-atum.*
 Ovid = *Ovidius-i m.*

P.

Pace = *passus-ŭs m* ; *mille passus =*
 a mile.
 Pain (a) = *dolor-ŭis m.*
 Paint (to) = *pingo-ĕre, pinxi, pictum.*
 Pardon (to) = *ignosco-ĕre-novi-notum*
 (dat.).
 Parent = *parens-entis c.*
 Part = *pars, partis f.*
 Pastures = *pascua-orum n.*
 Patavium = *Patavium-i n.*
 People = *plebs, plēbis f.*
 Perform = *fungor-i, functus sum (abl.).*
 Physician = *medicus-i m.*
 Place (a) = *locus-i m.*
 Place, pitch (to) =
 pono-ĕre, posui, positum.
 Place-on = *impono-ĕre-posui-positum*
 (acc. and dat.).
 Plain (a) = *campus-i m* ; *planities-ei f.*
 Plain = *manifestus-a-um.*
 Play (a) = *ludus-i m.*
 Play (to) = *ludo-ĕre, lusi, lusum.*
 Please = *placeo-ĕre-ui-atum (dat.).*
 Pleasing = *gratus-a-um.*
 Pleasure = *voluptas-tātis f.*
 Pluck, card = *carpo-ĕre, carpsi, carptum.*
 Poet = *poeta-ae m.*
 Poison = *venenum-i n.*
 Poisoner = *veneficus-i m.*
 Poor = *pauper-ĕris* ; *inops-ŭpis.*
 Post = *statio-ŭis f.*
 Praise (*n.*) = *laus, laudis f.*
 Praise (to) = *laudo-are-avi-atum.*
 Prefer = *antepono-ĕre-posui-positum*
 (acc. and dat.).
 Pretend = *simulo-are-avi-atum.*

Prevent = obsto-are-stīti-stitum (dat.).
 Promise = polliceor-eri-ītus sum.
 Prone = pronus-a-um.
 Prudently = prudenter.
 Punish = punio-ire-īvi-ītum.
 Pupil = discipulus-i m.
 Put on = induo-ēre-ui-ūtum.
 Pyrrhus = Pyrrhus-i m.
 Pythagoras = Pythagoras-ae m.

Q.

Queen = regina-ae f.
 Quickly = celeriter.
 Quietly = tacite.

R.

Race = certamen-īnis n.
 Raise (forces) = comparo-are-avi-ātum.
 Rampart = vallum-i n.
 Rank = ordo-īnis m.
 Read = lēgo-ēre, lēgi, lectum.
 Really = reverā.
 Receive = accipio-ēre-cepi-ceptum.
 Red = ruber, rubra, rubrum.
 Region = regio-ōnis f.
 Rejoice = gaudeo-ēre, gavīsus sum.
 Remain = maneo-ēre, mansi, mansum.
 Renowned = clarus-a-um.
 Resist = resisto-ēre-stīti-stitum (dat.).
 Rest (n) = quies-ētis f.
 Restrain = retineo-ēre-tinui-tentum.
 Return = redeo-ire-ii-ītum.
 Revolt (a) = defectio-onis f.
 Rich = dives-ītis.
 Riches = divitiarum f.
 Rise = surgo-ēre, surrexi, surrectum.
 River = flumen-īnis n; fluvius-i m.
 Robber = latro-ōnis m.
 Rock = scopulus-i m.
 Roman = Romanus-a-um.
 Rome = Roma-ae f.
 Rose = rosa-ae f.
 Rule (a) = regula-ae f.
 Rule (to) = rego-ēre, rexi, rectum.

S.

Sad = tristis-e.
 Safe = salvus-a-um; incolumis-e.
 Sail (to) = vela facio-ēre, feci, factum.

Sailor = nauta-ae m.
 Salute = saluto-are-avi-ātum.
 Satisfy = satisfacio-ēre, feci, factum (dat.).
 Saturn = Saturnus-i m.
 Scipio = Scipio-ōnis m.
 Sea = mare, maris n.
 See = video-ēre, vīdi, visum.
 Seek = peto-ēre-i(v)i-ītum.
 Seize = rapio-ēre-ui, raptum.
 Senate = senatus-ūs m.
 Sense = sensus-ūs m.
 Serve = servio-ire-ii-ītum (dat.).
 Set out = proficiscor-i, profectus sum.
 Set-up = erigo-ēre-rexi-rectum.
 Seventh = septimus-a-um.
 Seven times = septies.
 Several = aliquot (indecl.).
 Shear = tondeo-ēre, totondi, tonsus.
 Sheep = ovis-is c.
 Shepherd = pastor-oris m.
 Shield = scutum-i n.
 Ship = navis-is f.
 Short = brevis-e.
 Shorten = minuo-ēre-ui-ūtum.
 Show = { monstro-are-avi-ātum.
 { adhibeo-ēre-ui-ītum.
 Shower = imber-bris m.
 Sin (to) = pecco-are-avi-ātum.
 Sing = canto-are-avi-ātum.
 Sister = soror-oris f.
 Sky = cælum-i n.
 Slanderous = maledicus-a-um.
 Slave = servus-i m.
 Slay = occīdo-ēre-cīdi-cisum.
 Small = parvus-a-um.
 Smile (a) = risus-ūs m.
 Smile (to) = subrideo-ēre-si-sum.
 Smith = faber, fabri m.
 Society = sodalitas-tatis f.
 Soften = mollio-ire-īvi-ītum.
 Soldier = miles-ītis m.
 Sometimes = interdum.
 Sometime or other = aliquando.
 Son = filius-i m.
 Soon = mox.
 Soul = animus-i.
 Spare = parco-ēre, peperci, parsum (dat.).
 Speak, say = dico-ēre, dixi, dictum.
 Speak-evil-of = maledico-ēre-xi-ctum
 Spear = hasta-ae f. (dat.).
 Speech = oratio-ōnis f.
 Spend = impendo-ēre-di sum.
 Spend (life) = ago-ēre, egi, actum.

Watch (to) = *vigilo-are-avi-atum*.
 Water = *aqua-ae f.*
 Weapon = *telum-i n.*
 Wear-out = *conficio-ěre-feci-fectum*.
 Weep = *fleo-ěre, flevi, fletum*.
 Wend one's way =
 iter facio-ěre, feci, factum.
 White = *albus-a-um*.
 Why ? = *cur ?*
 Wicked = *impröbus-a-um*.
 Wing = *ala-ae f.*
 Winter = *hiems-ěmis f.*
 Wise = *sapiens-entis*.
 Woman = *femina-ae ; mulier-eris f.*
 Wood = *silva-ae f.*
 Wool = *lana-ae f.*
 Work (toil) = *opera-ae f.*
 Work (a) = *opus-ěris n.*

Work (to) = *labōro-are-avi-atum*.
 World = *mundus-i m. ; orbis-is m.*
 Worship = *colo-ěre, colui, cultum*.
 Worth while = *operae pretium*.
 Worthy = *dignus-a-um*.
 Wretch = *seclustus-i m.*
 Wretched = *miser-era-erum*.
 Writer = *scriptor-ōis m.*
 Wrong = *prāvus-a-um*.

Y.

Year = *annus-i m.*
 Yellow = *flavus-a-um*.
 Yesterday = *heri*.
 Yet (still) = *adhuc*.
 Yet (however) = *tamen*.

A SHORT ACCOUNT OF THE PERSONS AND PLACES NAMED IN THE EXERCISES.

I.—PERSONS.

ACHILLES, son of Peleus and the sea goddess Thetis. He was the foremost of the Greek chieftains that besieged Troy; but our admiration of his prowess is considerably lessened by the knowledge of the fact that he was rendered invulnerable, save in his right heel, by which his mother held him when she dipped him in the Styx to obtain the above result. He was shot in the right heel by an arrow discharged by Paris, youngest son of Priam, king of Troy, just as he was driving the Trojans through the Scaean gate of the city.

ALEXANDER, surnamed "The Great," was the son of Philip and Olympias. He is known to us as the conqueror of India and the East. He died at Babylon in the 32nd year of his life.

APOLLO, god of the sun, music, archery, medicine, disease, and prophecy. He was son of Latona, and brother of Diana. His chief seat was at Delphi.

ARISTIDES, celebrated Athenian, surnamed "The Just" from his virtue. But it is said that the Athenian populace grew so tired of hearing him called "The Just," that they began to pelt him for it. He was commander at the battle of Salamis.

BRUTUS. There were two famous Romans of this name: one, who expelled Tarquin, the seventh king of Rome, and his family because of their tyranny over the people; the other who was the leader of the conspiracy against Julius Caesar, which ended in the assassination of the latter. He slew himself after the battle of Philippi.

CÆSAR. The most famous of this name was Caius Julius, renowned for his victories in Gaul, and his invasion of Britain, B.C. 55. He has left us an account of this in his "Commentaries" or "De Bello Gallico." He was also engaged in a Civil War with Pompey, who was his great rival. He has left us an account of this in his "De Bello Civili." He was assassinated by Brutus and others on the 15th of March, B.C. 44. He fell dead at the base of Pompey's statue.

CATALINE, a Roman of profligate habits, who entered into a conspiracy to destroy the then existing government. Cicero detected the conspiracy; the conspirators were attacked, and Cataline died sword in hand after a brief but vigorous struggle.

CATO. There were two famous Romans of this name. The *first* was M. Porcius, surnamed Censorius, from his having held the

office of censor. He was very strict and severe in his habits and opinions. He lived to a great age, in possession of all his faculties; so that Cicero makes him the leading figure in his Treatise on Old Age. The *second* was Marcus, surnamed Uticensis, from his having stabbed himself at Utica, rather than fall into the hands of Caesar. He was great-grandson to the above.

CICERO, born at Arpinum, was a famous Roman lawyer, orator, statesman, and philosopher. He was renowned for his denunciation of Verres, the tyrannous propraetor of Sicily, and Cataline, the arch-conspirator. He roused the enmity of M. Antonius against him; who sent assassins after him as he fled in a litter. When they came up with him he put out his head and they cut it off. It was carried to Fulvia, the wife of Antony, and she sated her vengeance by pulling out the tongue and piercing it through and through with a gold bodkin. He wrote many speeches, philosophical treatises, and letters to Atticus and other friends.

CINEAS, the physician of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, who waged war upon the Romans, under the leadership of Fabricius, the Dictator. Cineas went to Fabricius and offered to poison Pyrrhus for a reward, but Fabricius sent him back to Pyrrhus with a letter explaining what had happened.

CODRUS, the last king of Athens. When the Heraclidae made war against Athens the oracle declared that victory would rest with that nation whose king was killed in battle. So they ordered that Codrus should be spared. He, however, changed garments with a soldier and attacked one of the enemy, by whom he was slain.

DIANA, daughter of Latona, sister of Apollo. She was goddess of the chase, and identified by some with the moon. The most famous of her temples was that at Ephesus, which was one of the Seven Wonders of the world.

FABIUS. There were several Romans of this name, but the most famous of all was Quintus Fabius Maximus. He was surnamed "Cunctator" or "The Delayer," because, when chosen dictator against Hannibal in the second Punic War, instead of meeting him in the open field, he harassed him and his army by counter marches and ambushes. He died at the age of 100, after he had been five times consul and twice honoured with a triumph. His funeral expenses were defrayed from the treasury.

FABRICIUS, a celebrated Roman, who, after conquering the Samnites and Lucanians, was chosen to take the field against Pyrrhus, king of Epirus. When he was invited by Pyrrhus to a conference, while they were conversing, a huge elephant put his trunk over the curtain in front of which they were seated and began to trumpet—this in no wise disturbed Fabricius. The next day, when Pyrrhus tried to bribe him, Fabricius answered: "Your gold moves me no more to-day than your beast did yesterday!" To which Pyrrhus made reply: "This is that Fabricius whom it is more difficult to turn from the path of honour than it is to turn the sun from his course!" Fabricius was noted for his knowledge of warfare, and the extreme simplicity of his manners.

GRACCHUS. There were two famous Romans of this name, Tiberius and Caius. They were the sons of T. Sempronius Gracchus, and Cornelia, who was known

as "The Mother of the Gracchi." One day when a Campanian matron was showing her her jewels, Correlia delayed her by conversation until her sons returned from school. When they did, she laid her hands on their shoulders, and said to the matron: "*These* are my jewels!" Tiberius and Caius tried to raise the position of the people; but Tiberius was killed by P. Nasica on the eve of being elected tribune, and Caius by order of the consul Opimius. His body was thrown into the Tiber, and his wife forbidden to wear mourning.

HANNIBAL, a celebrated Carthaginian general, and son of Hamilcar. When he was quite a boy, his father led him to the altar, and made him swear undying hatred against the Romans. This oath the boy kept well, for in the second Punic War he inflicted two severe defeats on the Romans, one at Lake Trasimene, the other at the village of Cannae. At the latter the slaughter was so great that three *modii* (something between a peck and a bushel) of rings, each taken from the hand of a dead Roman *of distinction*, were emptied out on the floor of the Carthaginian senate-house. He was finally defeated by Scipio at Zama, and fled to Adrumetum, then to king Antiochus, and then to king Prusias, who was ordered by the Romans to give him up. Hannibal, however, took a dose of poison, which he always carried in a ring on his finger, and so died.

HECTOR, eldest son of Priam, king of Troy, and its brave defender against the Greeks for nearly ten years. He married Andromache, and had by her a son whom the Trojans called Astyanax, or "King of the City" out of compliment to his father; but he was hurled from the battlements by the Greeks at the taking of Troy. Hector slew

Patroclus, the friend of Achilles, who, in return, slew Hector and dragged his body at his chariot's rails three times round the walls of Troy, in presence of his grief-stricken parents—a piece of petty spite, of which a great mind should be ashamed. A dutiful and loving son, a kind and tender husband and father, a brave and skilful general against overwhelming odds, Hector stands out as the noblest figure in "The Iliad," if not in all history.

HERCULES, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, a hero noted for his enormous strength and prowess. Juno, being jealous at the birth of the child, sent two snakes to devour him. The child, not terrified at the sight of the serpents, boldly seized them both in his hands and squeezed them to death. Like many other heroes, he was taught by the centaur, Chiron. When he was only eighteen he delivered the neighbourhood of Mt. Cithaeron from a huge lion which wasted it. On consulting the oracle of Apollo, he was told that he must serve Eurystheus, king of Sparta, for twelve years, and that then, after achieving what are known as "the twelve labours of Hercules," he should be reckoned among the gods. They are as follows:

(1) He slew the Nemean lion and clothed himself in its skin.

(2) He slew the Lernaean hydra which had seven heads. As fast as he cut off one, two more sprang up in its place: so he seared the wounds with a hot iron, and so despatched the monster.

(3) He had to bring alive to Eurystheus a stag with golden horns and brazen feet, noted for its swiftness.

(4) He had to bring alive to Eurystheus a terrible boar which ravaged the district of Erymanthus.

(5) He had to cleanse the Augean stables where 3000 oxen were: this he did by turning a river through it.

(6) He was ordered to kill the carnivorous birds which ravaged the country near lake Stymphales, in Arcadia.

(7) He brought alive to Peloponnesus the Cretan wild bull.

(8) He obtained possession of the mares of Diomedes which fed on human flesh, having first slain Diomedes.

(9) He was commanded to obtain the girdle of Hippolyte, queen of the Amazons.

(10) He killed the monster Geryon, king of Gades, and brought to Argos his flocks which fed on human flesh.

(11) To obtain the golden apples from the gardens of Hesperides. He slew the dragon which guarded them, and so obtained the apples.

(12) He brought to earth the three-headed dog, Cerberus, which guarded the gates of hell.

Hercules rescued Deianira from the centaur, Nessus, and slew him. As he was dying, he gave her a tunic which she afterwards sent to Hercules as he was going to sacrifice on Mt. Ceta. But the tunic was poisoned by the blood of the Lernaean hydra, which eat into his skin. Hercules, seeing he could not rid himself of it, erected a huge pyre, spread the hide of the Nemean lion upon it; and, when he had laid down on it, bade them set fire to it, and so went up to heaven.

HIPPOMENES, a son of Macareus and Merope, who married Atalanta with the assistance of Venus. She was the daughter of Schoeneus, king of Scyros, and famed for her running. Those who wooed her had to run a race with her: if they won, they had her; if not, they were killed. Venus gave Hippomenes

three golden apples from the garden of the Hesperides. After they had started, he threw them away one by one; Atalanta stopped to pick them up, each in turn, and so Hippomenes won the race and married her.

HOMERUS, the great epic poet of Greece. Tradition said he was blind; but this *may* have arisen from the fact that the Greek word *homēros* signifies "blind." Seven cities contended for the honour of being his birth-place: "Smyrna, Chios, Colophon, Salamis, Rhodos, Argos, Athenē." His two great poems are "The Iliad" and "The Odyssey." "The Iliad" gives us some account of the siege of Troy, or Ilium, by the Greeks, though the *real* subject is the wrath of Achilles and its dire effects upon the Grecian host. Though the cause of Achilles in his quarrel with Agamemnon was perfectly just, Achilles put himself out of court by the mean request he made of his mother to ask Jupiter to help the Trojans against his own countrymen, thereby giving expression to a lurking suspicion in his own heart that the Greeks could get on very well without him. Jupiter did so, but very reluctantly, through fear of his wife, Juno, who hated the Trojans. The consequence was that Hector and the Trojans reached the Greek ships, and would have burnt them all had not the Great Ajax bravely defended them. Achilles, becoming alarmed, sent his dear friend, Patroclus, out in his armour; but he was slain by Hector. Thereupon Achilles became reconciled by Agamemnon, and went back to battle with the express purpose of slaying Hector, which he did. Hector's body was ransomed by king Priam at the bidding of Jupiter, and the Trojans gave their dead chieftain a splendid funeral, as indeed he well deserved; and, to quote the last line of Pope's

translation of "The Iliad," Peaceful slept the mighty Hector's shade." The ending of this noble poem has been likened by the poet Cowper to the exit of a great man from a company whom he has been magnificently entertaining. "The Odyssey" gives us an account of the adventures of Odysseus, better known as Ulysses, son of Laertes, one of the foremost of the Greek chiefs who sailed against Troy, a man noted for his strategy and diplomacy, whence Homer calls him *polumētis* or "much-counselling." For ten years after the fall of Troy he wandered about. His chief adventures were with the Cyclops, the enchantress Cīrcē, the Sirens, Scylla and Charybdis, &c. He was shipwrecked on the island of Ogygia, where dwelt the nymph Calypso, who, being deeply enamoured of him, detained him, but at last let him go at the bidding of Jupiter. He was again shipwrecked by Neptune, who was angry with him for having put out the one eye of his son Polyphēmus, the Cyclops, and thrown up on the island of Phœacia, of which Alcīnus was king. He was hospitably treated, and related his adventures to the king, who sent him back to his own island of Ithaca. On arriving there he found his palace overrun with princes from the neighbouring islands, who, believing Ulysses dead, came as suitors for the hand of Penelope, his good and virtuous wife, and offered all sorts of insults to his son Telemachus, even lying in wait to slay him when he went in search of news of his father. This evil design was, however, frustrated by the goddess Minerva, who was throughout the "guardian angel" of Ulysses. She disguised him as an aged beggar, and thus he went into his palace and saw all that was going on, but bided his time. At last Penelope, worn out by the solicitations of the

suitors, consented to marry the one who could bend the bow of Ulysses. They all tried, but failed; Ulysses took it and succeeded; and now, appearing in his original form, he exclaimed:

"Dogs, ye have had your day; ye feared no more

Ulysses vengeful from the Trojan shore."

He then directed an arrow at the heart of Antinoös, the leader of the suitors, and slew him; then at Eury-machus, whom he also slew; and finally killed them all with the help of Telemachus and those who had remained faithful to him, and was happily reunited to his wife and family.

HORATIUS, Quintus Flaccus, the great lyric poet of Rome, in the reign of Augustus. He wrote "The Odes," "Epodes," "Satires," "Epistles," and "Ars Poetica." He was a great friend of Virgil's, and Mæcenas was a patron of them both, as well as the emperor Augustus.

JUGURTHA, the illegitimate son of Manastabal, the brother of Micipsa, who were the sons of Masinissa, king of Numidia. He bribed the Romans to support him against his cousin, Adherbal. He was afterwards betrayed into their hands, and adorned the triumph of Marius. He was thrown into prison and died a week after of hunger, B.C. 106.

JUPITER, called by the Greeks Zeus. He was the supreme god of all, though himself subject to the three Fates, Clotho, Lachesis, and Atrōpos. He was the son of Saturn, who, in fear of being dethroned, devoured all his children as soon as they were born. Jupiter, however, was rescued and conveyed to a cave in Mt. Ida in Ciete, where he was fed on goat's milk. His cries were drowned by the noise of drums and

cymbals which the Corybantes beat. He afterwards drove out his father, Saturn, and divided the kingdom between himself and his two brothers, himself taking the sovereignty of heaven, Neptune that of the sea, and Pluto the infernal regions. He married his sister Juno.

LATONA, daughter of Cœus, the Titan, and Phœbe. Jupiter fell in love with her, and this roused the anger of Juno, who persecuted her from place to place, sending a great snake called the Python to frighten her. Jupiter changed her into a quail, and she came to Delos and there gave birth to Apollo and Diana. At last she became a powerful deity, and saw her children receive divine honours. She had temples at Argos, Delos, and other places.

LIVIUS, Titus, a native of Padua, celebrated for his history of the Roman people. It is said that Livia appointed the historian to be tutor to Claudius, the brother of Germanicus, but death prevented him from enjoying the honour.

MARIUS, C., a celebrated Roman, who, from a peasant, became one of the most powerful and cruel tyrants that Rome ever beheld during her consular government. He was born at Arpium, of obscure and illiterate parents. He conquered Jugurtha, the Cimbri, and Teutones, and entered Rome in triumph. He opposed the dictator Sulla, but had to save his life by flight, and, for safety, plunged himself up to the neck in a marsh. He was discovered and dragged to prison, and when a Gaul was sent to kill him he exclaimed: "Man! darest thou slay Caius Marius!" The Gaul, terrified at the expression of his countenance, dropped the dagger and fled. Marius was released, and once more entered

Rome, which he deluged with the blood of his enemies. His end was probably hastened by the large quantities of wine which he drank when ill.

MILO, a celebrated athlete of Crotona in Italy. He carried a bullock on his shoulders for more than forty yards; then killed it at a blow and eat it. He was a disciple of Pythagoras, and one day a pillar gave way, and he supported the roof. In his old age he saw a tree half cleft: he tried to tear it asunder, but the parts came together again and held him fast, and he was devoured by wild beasts.

OVIDIUS, P. Naso, a celebrated Roman poet, born at Sulmo on March 20th, about 43 B.C. As he was intended for the bar his father sent him early to Rome, and removed him to Athens in the 16th year of his age. But his love for poetry soon came uppermost, and he soon gained admirers, among whom were Virgil and Horace, while the Emperor Augustus patronized him liberally. But one day the emperor banished him to Tomi, on the shores of the Euxine, for a cause that has never been known. He died there at the age of 59, in the year A.D. 17.

PYRRHUS. There were two celebrated men of this name. The *first* was the son of Achilles, called also Neoptolemus because he came "late for the (Trojan) war." He slew Priam, king of Troy, with his own hand, in presence of his wife Hecuba and their daughters. The *second* was a king of Epirus, who made war upon the Romans. He was greatly struck with their bravery; and once, after gaining a victory, when he saw the dead Romans lying on their backs all with wounds in front, he exclaimed: "With such men I could conquer

the world." When his generals congratulated him on his victory he said: "One more such victory and I shall return to Epirus without a soldier!" He was slain while fighting at Argos by a tile which was thrown on his head. (See also FABRICIUS.).

PYTHAGORAS, a celebrated philosopher, born at Samos. He first made himself known in Greece by obtaining the first prize for wrestling at the age of 18. Among other doctrines he taught that of *metempsychosis*, or the "transmigration of souls," *i.e.* that after death the souls of men remove into various bodies. He is supposed to have died at Metapontum, B.C. 497.

SATURNUS, son of Uranus and Terra. He was cruel to his father and children, and the latter rebelled against him and turned him out of heaven. Janus, who was then king of Italy, received Saturn with marked kindness and made him his partner on the throne. Saturn taught the people agriculture and the liberal arts; and his rule was so mild and beneficent that it was called "The Golden Age."

SCIPIO. There were several noble Romans of this name; but the most famous was the one surnamed Africanus, because he conquered Hannibal at the battle of Zama, a town of Numidia, 300 miles from Carthage. Scipio died at his country-house at Liternum, at the age of 43, B.C. 134. He was regarded in the following ages as a pattern of virtue, innocence, courage, and liberality. Hannibal regarded him as the greatest of all generals.

SINON, a treacherous Greek, who was left behind by the other Greeks when they pretended to have retired from Troy in despair, whereas they

had only gone as far as the island of Tenedos. The Trojans, thinking they had gone back to Greece, came out of their city, and found Sinon with his hands tied behind his back. Sinon told them a piteous tale of his ill-treatment by the Greeks in general, and Ulysses in particular. Priam and the Trojans were moved with compassion, and welcomed him among them. Sinon persuaded them to take the wooden horse into Troy, though Laocoon, a priest, vehemently opposed it; for which he and his two sons were destroyed by snakes. When the Trojans were overcome with feasting and sleep, Sinon opened the door of the wooden horse, from which issued Greek chieftains and soldiers: they lit fires to attract the notice of the Greeks in Tenedos, who returned; and thus Troy, which had resisted the attacks of the Greeks for ten years, was taken and burnt.

TARQUINIUS. Two of the seven kings of Rome were called by this name. The *first* was so called because he came from Tarquinii in Etruria. By the advice of his wife, Tanaquil, he went to Rome; and as he drew near the city, an eagle swooped down, took his cap off his head and placed it on again, which they took as a good omen. He called himself Lucius, and was surnamed 'Priscus,' and reigned with justice. He greatly beautified Rome, laid the foundations of the Capitol, and provided the Romans with aqueducts and subterraneous sewers. He was assassinated by two sons of his predecessor after reigning 36 years. The *second*, Tarquin, was seventh king of Rome, and was surnamed *Superbus*, or "The Proud," because of his pride and insolence. Lucretia, a virtuous maiden, stabbed herself, because of the insult offered her by one of his sons. So the Romans expelled the Tarquins, and would have no more

kings, but consuls. Tarquin provided Rome with the Sibylline books.

TRITON, a sea-god, son of Neptune.

He is generally represented as a man above and a dolphin below, and blowing a shell.

VENUS, according to some the daughter of Jupiter and Dione; according to others she was sprung from the foam of the sea, hence the Greeks called her "Aphrodite," from *aphros* = foam. She was the goddess of love and beauty, and gained the distinction in the following manner. When Peleus and the sea goddess, Thetis, the parents of Achilles, were about to be married, all the gods and goddesses were invited to the wedding save Discord. She, in revenge, threw a golden apple into the midst of the assembly on which was inscribed, "Let it be given to the fairest." Three goddesses were chosen to compete for the prize of beauty, Juno, Minerva, and Venus; and they were bidden to go to the foot of Mt. Ida in Asia Minor, where Troy stood, and there they would find Paris, youngest son of Priam, king of Troy, tending his flocks, who would award the prize to the one he thought most beautiful. Said Juno, "I am queen of heaven: I will make you ruler of the world." Said Minerva, "I am goddess of war: I will make you the greatest general." Said Venus, "I am queen of love: I will give you the loveliest woman for your bride." So Paris gave Venus the apple, and she was henceforth the queen of beauty. Shortly after this, Paris went across the sea to visit Menelaus, king of Sparta, who had married Helen, the most beautiful woman of the day. Paris was kindly received, and rewarded the hospitality of Menelaus by running off with his wife, and taking her to

Troy. Menelaus sent an embassy to demand Helen back; but, as his request was refused, he sent to his brother Agamemnon, king of Mycenae, who gathered all the Greek chiefs around him, and they sailed for Troy; and thus began "The Trojan War." Venus was also called "Cytherea," from the island of Cythera off the coast of Peloponnesus, as she was supposed to have sprung from the sea near there; and "Erycina" because she had a temple on Eryx, a promontory of Sicily.

VIRGILIUS, P. Maro, the great epic poet of Rome, born near Mantua, B.C. 70. His three great poems are "The Bucolics," pastoral love idylls, after the style of Theocritus; "The Georgics," works relating to farming and bee-keeping, after the style of Hesiod; and "The Æneid," his greatest work, after the style of Homer. It narrates the adventures of Æneas, the Trojan prince, son of Venus and Anchises, and cousin to Hector. He earned the title of "pius," or full of natural affection, because, when Troy was burning, his father, who was paralysed, wanted him to escape without him; but he insisted on taking him out of Troy on his shoulders, though he lost his wife Creusa in so doing. With many followers, Æneas set sail for Italy, where the fates told him to build a city. After many wanderings, he lost his father Anchises, and touched at Sicily to bury him. He then set sail for Italy; but Juno espied them, and bribed Æolus to give her winds to shipwreck the fleet of Æneas, which was driven back on the coast of Africa, where Dido was building her city, Carthage. Dido received Æneas and the Trojans kindly, but Venus, afraid she would change her feelings in a night, substituted her son, Cupid, for Ascanius, the son of

Æneas. While Æneas was narrating the fall of Troy and his subsequent adventures at a banquet, given in honour of Æneas to the Trojans and Syrians, Cupid inspired the queen with a passionate love for Æneas. She eventually persuaded him to marry her and share the kingdom with her. Jupiter, however, at the instigation of a Moorish prince, Iarbas, whose offers of marriage had been scornfully rejected, sends Mercury down to tell Æneas he must leave. He does so: and Dido in despair erects a funeral pyre and slays herself on it. Meanwhile Æneas pursues his way to Italy; but, at the bidding of his pilot, Palinurus, who mistrusted the appearance of the weather, he puts in again at Sicily, where dwelt a Trojan prince, Acestes. There he holds funeral games in honour of his father, Anchises. But while the games are in progress the Trojan women, weary of wandering and spured on by Juno, who comes in the guise of one of them, attempt to burn the ships. Æneas, however, rushes up in time, and prays to Jupiter, who sends a storm and quenches the flames. This calamity induces Æneas to leave behind the aged and feeble, and only take to Italy the able-bodied men. This he does, and on reaching Italy consults the Cumean Sibyl, who tells him to descend into Hades and consult his father, Anchises, as to

the future of his descendants. He does so, and then goes northward to Latium, where dwelt king Latinus, who had a beautiful daughter, Lavinia, betrothed to Turnus, king of the Rutuli: Æneas, however, demands her in marriage; Latinus at first refuses, but afterwards, scared by portents, he yields, till Turnus offers to fight for Lavinia. So the two peoples engage in war, at the end of which Æneas slays Turnus in single combat. Such is a brief outline of "The Æneid"; and much as we may admire the grace and beauty of its diction, the reader of Homer and Virgil cannot but be struck with the way that in which Virgil has copied Homer. The wanderings of Æneas in Book III. are those of Ulysses in "The Odyssey." Ulysses is detained by Calypso; so is Æneas by Dido. Achilles holds funeral games at the tomb of Patroclus; so does Æneas at the tomb of Anchises. Ulysses goes down into hell to consult the blind seer, Tiresias; so does Æneas to consult Anchises: while the last six books recall the Homeric battles. Virgil was virtuous and amiable, but not blessed with very good health. He was the friend of Horace and Ovid, and largely patronized by the emperor Augustus and Mycenæ. He died at Brundisium on the 22nd of September, B.C. 91, at the age of 41.

II.—PLACES.

ATHENS, capital of Attica; founded B.C. 1556 by Cecrops, and an Egyptian colony.

BRUNDISIUM, now Brindisi, a city on the Adriatic, whence the Romans embarked for Greece.

DELOS, one of the Cyclades off the coast of Greece. (See LATONA.)

EPHESUS, a city of Ionia, built by the Amazons.

FÆSULÆ, a town of Etruria, famous for its augurs.

FALERII, a town of Etruria, famous for pastures and sausages: the Romans borrowed some laws from these.

GADES, a small island in the Atlantic, on the Spanish coast; 25 miles from "The Pillars of Hercules," or straits of Gibraltar.

MANTUA, a town of Italy beyond the Po: old capital of Etruria.

MASSILIA, now *Marseilles*, a town of Gallia Narbonensis on the Mediterranean. It was founded B.C. 539 by the people of Phoea in Asia, who left their country to avoid the tyranny of the Persians.

MILETUS, capital of Ionia in Asia Minor, and gave birth to many famous men.

NUMIDIA, an inland country of Africa, which now forms the kingdom of *Algiers* and *Bildergerid*.

PATAVIUM, now Padua, a city of Italy on the shores of the Adriatic. It lay to the north of the river Po.

ROME, the most famous city in the world; capital of the district of Italy called Latium. The inhabitants were called "Latini," hence the Romans spoke Latin. Rome was founded B.C. 753 by Romulus, who opened its doors to the off-scouring of other nations, and furnished

it with women by seizing the Sabine maids whom he had invited to a spectacle. At the time Our Saviour came into the world, Rome was mistress of nearly the whole then-known world.

SULMO, an ancient town of the Peligni, about 90 miles from Rome.

TARENTUM, a town of Calabria in Italy, near the mouth of the river Galesus.

TIBUR, a town about 20 miles north of Rome to which the wealthy Romans retired on account of the salubrity of its air.

TROJA, better known as Troy, a famous city which underwent a ten year's siege at the hand of the Greeks about B.C. 1066. It was situated on the west coast of Asia Minor. (See *ACHILLES*, *HECTOR*, *HOMER*, *SINON*, *VENUS*, and *VIRGIL*.)

VENUSIA, a town of Apulia. Part of the Roman army fled there after the defeat at Cannae by the Carthaginians. The town, though in ruins, still contains many pieces of antiquity.

APPENDIX.

RHYMES ON SPECIAL RULES

A.

Whenever nouns in -a and -us
A corresponding meaning have;
In plural *-abus* put for -is
To nouns in -a, and you will save
Confusion and mistake.

B.

You will find Latin Vocatives
Always as Latin Nominatives
The same, and that's a fact!
But those of declension two in -us
Take -e, while such as *filius*,
-ie into -i contract.

C.

Proles, vates, senex, canis,
Accipiter too, and *juvenis*,
With *pater, mater, frater, panis*,
Whose genitives all end in -is,
Though not increasing -um they take,
When they their genitive plural make.

D.

Words of one syllable -ium take;
But these the general rule forsake;
Dux, vox, and *grex, pes, fur* and *rex*
In -um you'll find, with *lex* and (prex.),
And dont forget to add *flos, fraus*,
Unto this list, with *mos* and *laus*.

E.

Dissyllables in -cus you'll always find
 Take -ubus, and not -ibus; also, mind!
 Use -ubus too for *tribus*, and for *artus*;
 For *portus*, and for *veru*, and for *partus*.

F.

Never say -mu, -mi, -me, -mis,
 If to decline *domus* you wish;
 But *domi* you may always say
 Whene'er *at home* you wish to stay.

G.

With none but *res* and *dies* will you find
 Increasing cases in the plural, mind!
 And *dies*, singular, *common* gender shows,
 While, plural, only *masculine* it knows.

H.

Some verbs there are, of conjugation three,
 With 'i' before their endings, you will see.
 This 'i' put after present stem, but never
 Before a final 'e,' an 'i,' or short 'er.'
Capio, cupio, fodio, fugio, facio,
Pario, rapio, sapio, quatio, jacio,
 With compounds too of -*specio*, and of -*lacio*,
 Are those I mean; and *gradior, patior, morior*,
 Add to this list, with sometimes *potior, orior*.
 For *potior* makes *potitur*, or *potitur*,
Potērer or *potīrer*, *potīmur* or *potimur*.
Oriri and *orīrer* you will see,
 Though *orior*'s more conjugation *three*.

I.

A *dative* will to all these verbs belong;
 Put not accusative or you'll be wrong.
Persuade, command, heal, favour, hurt, displease,
Believe, obey, resist, spare, envy, please,
Serve, pardon, succour; nubere too, to wed,
 Which of the woman, not the man, is said;
 And if for things you *leisure have, or zeal*,
 Those things are *dative*; and for which you feel
Indulgence; and the *compounds*, too, of 'sum'
 Within this list are always sure to come.

But *juvo* (help) and *laedo* (hurt) demand
 That after then *accusative* should stand;
 And if a person's *interests* you consult,
Consulere with a *dative* will result;
 If you consult a man, *advice* to ask,
 To put *accusative* will be your task.

J.

After *to use, discharge, enjoy,*
 Also *possession get,*
 The object must, in Latin tongue,
 In *ablative* be set.
 Though *potior* a *genitive* too demands,
 Which after it sometimes correctly stands.

K.

After the verbs *to pity show,*
Remember, and forget,
 A *genitive*, in Latin tongue,
 Should properly be set.
 With *miseror, recordor* too,
Oblivisci to boot,
 The object may, if you prefer,
 In *accusative* be put.

L.

The verbs 'to ask' and 'to command,'
 'Advise' and 'strive' always demand
 That you the *English infinitive*
 Translate by *ut with subjunctive*;
 And if a 'not' with 'to' you see,
 Be careful then to use a 'ne';
 But mind! with 'jubeo' and 'conor' you
 Retain *infinitive* in Latin too.

M.

An *ablative* you'll always see
 With *a, ab, absque, abs, and de*;
 With *coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,*
 With *sine*, and with *pro* and *prae*.
 With *tenus* too, which follows its case,
 And *genitive plural* also takes.

N.

An accusative must always *be* put
 With *ad*, *adversus*, *ante*, *apud*;
Cis, *circā*, *circum*, *citrā*, *contrā*;
 Also with *ergā*, *extrā*, *infrā*,
 And *juxtā*, *ob*, and *inter*, *intrā*.
 With *praeter*, *penes*, *post*, and *pone*,
 With *per*, *secundum*, *propter*, *prope*;
 With *versus* (following case) and *suprā*,
 And dont forget to add *trans*, *ultrā*.
 If 'into,' 'up to,' be your notion,
 Add *in* and *sub*; for when they *motion*
 Express, they want *accusative*;
 When *rest* they mean, the *ablative*.

O.

The thing of which you *rob*, *defraud*, *deprive*
 Your neighbour must be always *ablative*;
 And *egeo* (need), and *careo* (am without),
 Require an *ablative* without a doubt.

P.

The *Kalends* came upon each month's *first* day;
 The *Nones* upon the *fifth* in eight months fell:
 For in *October*, *March*, *July*, and *May*
 The *seventh* was the *Nones*, observe that well!
 'Nine days inclusive' 'twixt the *Nones* and *Ides*
 The day, on which the *Ides* were fixed, decides.

INDEX I.

A.		PAGE			PAGE
Abbreviations	.	166	Complex sentence	.	149
Ablative Case, definition of	.	134	Composite subject	.	126
Uses of	.	136	Compounds of 'sum'	.	191
Absolute	.	82	Conditional Clauses	.	116
Of Agent	.	101, 136	Conjugations, the four	192—207	
Of Comparison	.	32	Conjunctions	.	111
Endings of	.	4, 6	Correlatives	.	43
Of Instrument	.	105, 136	D.		
Latin renderings of	.	136	Dative Case, definition of	.	4
Measurement	.	137	Uses of	.	132
Of Place where	.	138	Of Advantages, &c.	.	133
Of Place whence	.	139	Of the Agent	.	133
Of Robbing, &c.	.	135	Ethic	.	133
With dignus, indignus	.	136	Of the Possessor	.	134
With opus and usus	.	136	Of Remoter Object	.	133
With fungor, fruor	} App. J.		Declensions, the five	.	171—174
With utor, potior			Defective Nouns	.	144
Accu-ative Case, definition of	.	4	Defective Verbs	.	64
Uses of	.	127	Deponent Verbs	.	54
Cognate	.	127	Desiderative Verbs	.	55
Double	.	128	Distance, rule for	.	141
Duration of Time	.	140	E.		
With Infinitive	.	76	Ellipsis	.	168
Of Motion to	.	139	Epistolary Imperfect	.	151
After Passive Verbs	.	129	F.		
Of Respect	.	129	Factitive Object	.	128
Of Space	.	141	Feminines	.	145
Active Voice, definition of	.	54	Figures of Speech	.	168
Adjectives, Agreement of	.	29	Finite Verb, definition of	.	71
Comparison of	.	31	Frequentative Verbs	.	55
Numeral	.	32, 184	Future, Infinitive, Passive	.	80
Used adverbially	.	98	G.		
Adverbs	.	94	Genders, rules & exceptions	175—179	
Age, how expressed	.	140	Genitive Case, definition of	.	4
Agent, dative of	.	135	Uses of	.	129
Ablative of	.	101, 136	Of Place	.	138
Agreement	.	29	Of Price	.	132
Aposiopesis	.	168	Objective	.	130
Apposition	.	142	Partitive	.	131
C.			Subjective	.	129
Calendar, Latin	.	163	Gerunds	.	87
Case-endings, table of	.	6, 7	Gerundive	.	88, 89
Cases, definition of the	.	4			

H.		Pronouns, kinds of		PAGE
Hendiadys	168	Distinction between	35—38	54
Historic Infinitive	75	Declensions of	186—189	
Historic Tenses	73	Pronominal Adjectives	45—47	
		Proper Names		166
I.		Q.		
Impersonal Verbs	60	Quasi-Passive Verbs	55	
Inceptive Verbs	55	Questions, single and double	153, 154	
Indirect Questions	154, 156	Direct and indirect	155, 156	
In Oratio Obliqua	79			
Infinitive Verb, definition of	71			
Infinitive, uses of	71			
Prolative	71			
Inseparable Particles	109			
Interjections	124			
Irregular Nouns, &c.	143, 174			
Irregular Verbs	212—227			
L.		R.		
Locative Cases	138, 139	Reflective Pronouns	54, 188	
		Relative Pronouns	39, 188	
M.		S.		
Money, Roman	164	Semi-Deponent Verbs	55	
Moods, uses of	149	Sequence of Tenses	73	
Motion to and from	139	Space, rule for	141	
		Stem-formation of Nouns	3	
		Of Verbs	48, 49	
		Suffixes	146—148	
		Supines	92	
		Symphonious Nouns	16—27	
		Symphonious Verbs	66—70	
		Synesis	169	
N.		T.		
Names	166	Tenses, Formation of	48, 49	
Noun substantives	171—179	Uses of	150—152	
Numerals	32	Time, Roman	163, 164	
Table of	184	Tmesis	170	
O.		V.		
Onomatopœia	169	Variant I-Nouns	15	
Oratio Obliqua, rules for	76	Verbs, formation of	48—50	
Agreement in	77, 78	Agreement of	125—127	
Questions in	79	Copulative	126	
Tenses in	77	Conjugation of	190—235	
		Principal parts of	228—227	
		Vocative Case	5, App. B.	
		Voice of Verbs	54	
P.		W.		
Participles, uses of	84, 85	Weights, Roman	165	
Passive Voice, definition of	54			
Patronymics	146			
Perfects and Supines	228—235			
Periphrastic Conjugation	66			
Place, exiles for	138, 139			
Prepositions, uses of	100, 236			
With Accusative	App. N.			
With Ablative	App. M.			
With Genitive	100			
With Verbs	106			
Prohibitions	120			
		Z.		
		Zeugma	170	

INDEX II.

A.		PAGE		PAGE	
A, ab, abs	.	101,	102	Dies	9, 174
Absque	.	105		Difficilis	31, 182
Absum	.	191		Diu	183
Acer	.	181		Dives	183
Ad	.	104		Domus	174
Adsum	.	191		Donec	112
Ædes	.	143		Dum, dummodo	112
Age, agite	.	66		E.	
Aio	.	65,	228	E, ex	102
Aliquis	.	46		Ecce	124
Alius	.	46,	189	Ego	126, 127, 186
Alter	.	46		En	124
Amans	.	86		Eo, ire	224, 225
Ambi-	.	109		Equidem	97
Ambo	.	185		Erga	104
Amo	.	192,	200	Ergo	159
Amplius	.	136		Etiam	159
Ante	.	101		Etsi	112
Antea	.	111		Exterior	183
Antequam	.	111		Extra	236
Apud	.	103,	105	F.	
As (assis)	.	165		Facilis	31, 182
Audeo	.	55		Facio	208, 209
Audio	.	198,	206	Felix	181
Augeo	.	53,	228	Fero	220—223
Ave, avete	.	66		Fio	226, 227
B.				Fortiter	94, 183
Bene (compared)	.	183		Frugi	182
Bene (in compounds)	.	109		Fruor	App. Y.
Bonus	.	180,	182	Fulgorat	60
C.				Fungor	App. Y.
Capior	.	210,	211	G.	
Causā	.	100		Gaudeo	55
Cedo, cedite (cette)	.	66		Genu	173, 179
Cepi	.	64,	65	Glis	10, 177
Ceu	.	118		Gracilis	31, 182
Circa, circiter, circum	.	101,	236	Gradus	173
Cis, citra	.	236		Gratiā	20
Citerior, citimus	.	183		Gratiā	100
Clam	.	98		Gratiae	20
Contra	.	236		Gratulor	123
Cum	.	104,	105	H.	
Cupio	.	App. H.		Hei	124
Curo	.	89		Heres	10, 165
D.				Heu	124
De	.	102,	103	Heus	124
Deus, dea	.	8,	174	Hic	187
				Humi	140

I.		PAGE	N.		PAGE
Ibi		95	Nam, namque		159
Idem	47,	187	Natu		183
Idus		163	Nauci		132
Igitur		159	Nē	118—	121
Ille		187	Nē-quidem		97
In	103,	236	-nē		153, 156
Inde, indidem		95	Nen		120, 121
Inferior, infimus		183	Nemo		155, 189
Infra		236	Nequam		182
Inquam	65,	228	Nequeo		59, 215
Instar		100	Neuter		189
Insum		191	Nimis		96
Inter		236	Nitor		72
Interest	63,	64	Nolo		216, 217
Interior		183	Nonne		153, 156
Intra	183,	236	Nullus		189
Ipsē	37,	187	Num	153,	154
Iri		80	Nunquam		95
Iste		187	Nusquam		95
Istic		148			
J.			O.		
Jubeo	72,	228	Ob		102
Jupiter		175	Obliviscor		68
Jusjurandum		175	Obsum		191
Juxta		236	Ociō		183
K.			Odi		64
Kalendae		163	Olim		95
L.			Opem		144
Lacio		230	Opera-ae		23
Liceo	55,	68	Opus est		136
Licet	61,	68	Oportet		61
Littera-ae		143	Optimus		182
Locus-i and a		144			
Ludus-i		143	P.		
M.			Paenitet		61
Magister		171	Palam		98
Magnopere		183	Parum		96
Magnus		182	Parvus		182
Male		183	Pater-familias		8
Male (in compounds)		109	Per	101,	236
Malo	212,	213	Perinde		95
Memini	64,	65	Piget		61
Meus		188	Pluit		60
Miseret		61	Plus	182,	183
Modo		96	Post		236
Moenia		143	Postea		111
Multus		182	Postquam		111
			Posterior		183
			Prae	102,	236
			Praesum		191
			Precem		144

PRESS NOTICES, &c., ON FIRST EDITION OF PART I.

"None but an experienced teacher could have put together the facts which are here grouped in an order so calculated to assist the memory by means of associations and contrasts." *Educational Times.*

"Among the many Latin Grammars and Exercise Books at present in use, we know of none so suitable as this ought to prove to young pupils." *Daily Chronicle.*

"It proceeds on a practical method which has often been found fruitful in practice." *The Guardian.*

"The book....makes a helpful companion to the usual class books in 'composition.'" *Scotsman.*

"Mr. Frost has performed his task with no small measure of success.....As a supplementary text-book to the ordinary Grammar it is invaluable." *The Teacher's Aid.*

"Only one intimately acquainted with the intricacies of the language..... could have succeeded in arranging, in such a masterly way, the amount of information contained within the 180 pages of Mr. Frost's original and valuable book." *The Schoolmistress.*

"As an explanatory companion to any Latin Grammar, the author of this capital series of helps, &c., has produced a most successful manual.....Its paragraphs are really plain, thoughtful, simple, and suggestive." *Unverified.*

"It is admirably adapted for clearing away the usual clouds accompanying the dawn of Latin learning. We have used it in the High School, Dublin, with very great success." *C. H. Ward, Esq., M.A.*

"We find Mr. Frost's book of great service to us. It is a most valuable aid to pupils going up for examination." *E. E. Macdonald, Headmaster, Hillside Public School, Glasgow.*

"You have included within very reasonable limits what a boy needs, and what an advanced student may refer to with advantage." *Rev. E. H. Perowne, D.D., Master of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.*

"It appears to me to be very useful and clear.....The uses of the cases strike me as being excellently done." *H. E. Fanshawe, Esq., M.A., Tutor of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.*

"I think your manual is an excellent one.....The method is simple and the rules plain." *Rev. W. R. Worthington, M.A., Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.*

"You have succeeded admirably in presenting the Latin Grammar in a truly loveable form." *Rev. John Lynes, M.A., St. John's College, Cambridge.*



**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

